# Course Outline

List of Abbreviations  ix  
Introduction  x  
Korean Alphabet, Pronunciation, and Hangeul  xii  
The Korean Alphabet  xiii  
Pronunciation  xiii  
How Hangeul Works  xvi  
Hangeul Practice  xvii  

## Vocabulary  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LESSON 1 HOW ARE YOU?</th>
<th>1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Saying Hello and Good-bye</td>
<td>Honorifics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Present Tense</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Topic Particle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Word Order</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Grammar  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LESSON 2 WHERE IS THE MOVIE THEATER?</th>
<th>13</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Saying “Thank You” and “You’re Welcome”</td>
<td>Subject Particles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>“Where Is . . .” Expressions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Location Particles -에 and -에서</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## LESSON 3 HOW MUCH IS IT?  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clothes Shopping Expressions</th>
<th>Demonstrative Indexes 이, 그, 저</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Object Particles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Numbers 1–10 and Noun Counters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>있어요</code> = There Is/There Are . . .</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## LESSON 4 EUNJI’S DAY  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Daily Activities</th>
<th>Expressing “And”: N하고 N; S하고 S</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Postposition -도</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LESSON 5 AT SCHOOL</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>----</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>School Subjects</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-polite Expressions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-polite Question Ending -너</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-polite Background Ending -아</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polite Question Ending -세요</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pronouns</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expressing &quot;Have To&quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LESSON 6 PLEASE SEND ME AN E-MAIL!</th>
<th>67</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Computer Terms</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future Tense 1: First Person</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intentional Future Tense -해야/ -춰야</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future Tense 2: Conjecture -겠</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negations</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Possessive Pronouns</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LESSON 7 A NEW EMPLOYEE</th>
<th>79</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Describing Personal Appearance</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Tense</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indirect Objects</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Making Requests -어 주세요/ -아 주세요</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Modification of the Verb Root 하다 (To Do)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dependent Noun -분</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LESSON 8 HELLO, IS THIS THE HOSPITAL?</th>
<th>93</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Phone-Related Expressions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Counting Numbers Beyond 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I Like To...-고 싶은 데요</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LESSON 9 TAKE THIS MEDICINE EVERY SIX HOURS.</th>
<th>105</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Describing Symptoms and Body Parts</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Korean Gerund</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Every: -마다 and -며</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Perfect Form -더니</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Positive and Negative Commands: -세요 and -지 마세요</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LESSON 10 AT THE BANK</th>
<th>117</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Banking and Errands Expressions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>More Past Tense Constructions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expressions of Intention</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Postposition -만</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expressing Continuous Action with -서</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LESSON 11 EUNJI'S BROTHER'S HOUSE</th>
<th>129</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rooms and Household Items</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sentence Ending with Comment -네/ -네요</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Successive Action -면서</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It Seems That...-니/은 것 같다</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and -는 것 같다</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compound Verbs with -하다</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LESSON 12 GRANDMOTHER'S BIRTHDAY</th>
<th>141</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Family Terms</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present Tense Formation and the Progressive -고 있-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### LESSON 13 A TRIP TO JEJU ISLAND

**Travel Expressions and Terms**
- Expressing Ability: 
  - Travel: 
    - Expressing Ability: 
      - Expressing Ability: 
        - (으)니 or 
          - (으)니

**Future Gradual: Expressing “Will Become”**

**Expressing Attempt:**
- (으)니

**Dates**

### LESSON 14 ONE BIBIMBAP, PLEASE!

**Food Terms**
- Adjectives, Comparatives, and Superlatives
- Because/Since: 
  - (으)니 or 
    - (으)니

**I Should . . .**
- (으)니

**Although:**
- (으)니

### LESSON 15 I’M A RED DEVILS FAN TOO!

**Sports Terms and Colors**
- Tag Question: Confirming
  - (으)니

**For/Because: Causal Expression**
- (으)니

**Reported Speech**
- (으)니

**To Like:**
- (으)니

---

### LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS

- n.: noun
- adj.: adjective
- pron.: pronoun
- infml.: informal
- fml.: formal
- hon.: honorific
- subj. part.: subject particle
- dir. part.: direction particle
- post.: postposition
- loc. part.: location particle
INTRODUCTION

So you’ve decided to learn Korean. Congratulations! Learning a new language is one of the best and most rewarding decisions you can make in your lifetime. It opens up a door to a whole new world and a window into the minds of the people in that world. There is no better way to understand a nation and communicate with its people than by studying their literature and culture in their native language. At the same time, learning any new language is also a major commitment. It takes time, practice, and a great deal of patience. You learned your native language during the first seven years of your life through constant exposure to and use of the language. You shouldn’t expect to learn a new language fluently in any time shorter than that. However, you can learn the basics of a language, understand everyday conversations, and make yourself understood to a fair degree in a couple of years with consistent practice and the right kind of input. This course is designed to help you take that initial step toward mastering Korean. This course covers most major Korean grammatical concepts and basic vocabulary used in everyday situations. It should give you the head start you need to become a proficient speaker of Korean.

How to Use This Course

This beginner-level course is designed to use both audio and visual learning to help you begin to grasp the basics of the Korean language.

Let’s look first at how the book works. Following this introduction, you will find a section on pronunciation and the writing system. Use it in conjunction with the CDs to become fully acquainted with the sounds of Korean, and use the exercises to start becoming familiar with how the alphabet works in syllables. The first five lessons feature transliteration along with the Hangeul, but after Lesson 5, you’ll need to be able to read Hangeul to understand what’s going on. After you’re familiar with pronunciation and Hangeul, you can begin the 15 lessons, each dedicated to a unique topic. Each lesson in the book is divided into several individual sections:

Vocabulary Warm-Up

The vocabulary warm-up kicks off the lesson with key words you will hear in the dialogue. Many will be related to the topic of the lesson; some will be related to the grammar you will be learning in that particular lesson.

Dialogue

The dialogue in each lesson serves the double purpose of allowing you to read and hear natural Korean at work and to learn about Korean culture as well. Read these dialogues carefully; they will contain the grammar and key phrases that you will be learning later in the lesson.

Vocabulary

The vocabulary list is a mini-glossary for the lesson, containing new words from the dialogue. You can refer to this list while reading through the dialogue or study it separately to improve your Korean vocabulary.

Key Phrases

The key phrases section of each lesson contains words or phrases pertaining to a specific topic. Even if you don’t manage to get a full grasp of the grammar right away, having several of these phrases on hand will make you feel much more confident in your grasp of the language.

Culture Notes

Each lesson contains two culture notes. These notes are intended to give you a window on Korean culture. In these notes, you will learn everything from the history of such places as Seoul and Jeju Island to Korean traditions, from the ingredients typically found in Korean cuisine to the history of the Korean language itself.

Grammar

In each grammar note, you will learn a new aspect of Korean grammar. Each section contains example sentences showing the grammar in use. Grammar can be tricky for many beginning language learners, especially with a language which looks and sounds so different from English, but stick with it. These are the tools of language learning; without them, the nuts and bolts won’t hold together.

Exercises

The exercises in each lesson will test you on the grammar and vocabulary you’ve learned in each lesson. In addition to the exercise at the end of the lesson, there is also a comprehension exercise following the dialogue to test your understanding of what occurred in the dialogue.

Independent Language Task

The most important part of learning a language is practice. These language tasks end the lesson with ideas for practicing and improving on everything you’ve learned so far. They will often take the form of a journal entry, but there may also be suggestions for where to go to practice your Korean further.

Fight the urge to skip ahead; each section contains a unique building block to language learning, and by using each section progressively, you will have all the materials you need to learn Korean at a basic level. After you have completed an entire lesson, however, feel free to go back and review any section you wish to review! In fact, we encourage you to review frequently to continue to reinforce your Korean skills.
Finally, this book also includes Korean-English and English-Korean glossaries containing all the vocabulary from each lesson. Refer to it if you find yourself forgetting vocabulary from previous lessons.

The audio portion of this course is divided into two sets: Set A and Set B.

Set A includes the dialogue, vocabulary, key phrases, and several grammar examples from each lesson. This part of the audio course should be used along with the book, following the order of each lesson, allowing you to hear how the words on the page translate into spoken Korean.

*Helpful Hint: Once you have listened to the dialogue several times while reading along with the book, try listening to it without the book. It may seem counterintuitive to hear a language without translation, but listening to Korean without any English can help attune your ear to the language and will make understanding specific words easier down the line.

Set B is intended to be used on the go to supplement your studies. It contains the dialogue from each lesson, broken down into easily digestible sentences. You will hear pauses after each line of dialogue; use the pause to repeat the line and practice your pronunciation. Set B also includes several audio-only exercises that do not appear in the book. These are intended for you to use to practice what you've just learned, be it phrases used in the dialogue or key grammar points. It is best to use these exercises following the section they pertain to in the book, but they can also be used when you've completed the lesson to reinforce what you've learned.

Make sure that you are comfortable with the material taught in one lesson before moving on to the next one! Remember: Language learning is a gradual process; it won't happen overnight. Still, with repeated listening and reading, you will find yourself becoming a better and better Korean speaker each time you pick up this course.

Good luck! 행운을 빕니다

**KOREAN ALPHABET, PRONUNCIATION, AND HANGEUL**

The Korean orthographic system is called **Hangeul** 한글. Sounds are represented by symbols (jamo 자모), and the jamo are combined into syllables. Either two or three characters are combined to form a single syllable; on rare occasions, four jamo will be combined in one syllable.

### THE KOREAN ALPHABET

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(Letter/Name)</th>
<th>(Romanization)</th>
<th>(Pronunciation)</th>
<th>(Korean Example)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>giyeok</td>
<td>chieut</td>
<td>wa</td>
<td>가방, 학교</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ssanggiyeok</td>
<td>kieuk</td>
<td>wae</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nieun</td>
<td>tieut</td>
<td>oe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>digeut</td>
<td>pieup</td>
<td>yo</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ssangdigeut</td>
<td>hieut</td>
<td>t u</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rieul</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>wo</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mieum</td>
<td>ae</td>
<td>we</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bieup</td>
<td>ya</td>
<td>wi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ssangbieup</td>
<td>yae</td>
<td>yu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>siot</td>
<td>eo</td>
<td>eu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ssangsiot</td>
<td>e</td>
<td>ui</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ieuung</td>
<td>ye</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ssangjeut</td>
<td>o</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### PRONUNCIATION

The consonant characters are said to illustrate the position of the tongue, teeth, and lips when pronouncing that particular letter. Notice how the characters for corresponding voiced and voiceless consonants are similar in Hangeul. There are several exceptions to pronunciation rules in Korean; pay close attention to the audio portion of this course so that you learn carefully how to pronounce each word.

### CONSONANTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Romanization</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Korean Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ㄱ</td>
<td>g</td>
<td>like 'k' in 'kept'; like 'g' in 'go' when between vowels</td>
<td>가방, 학교</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅋ</td>
<td>k</td>
<td>like 'k' in 'kept'</td>
<td>크다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㄴ</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>like 'n' in 'never'</td>
<td>내일</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㄱ</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>like 't' in 'tip'; like 'y' in 'stop' when between vowels</td>
<td>뒤, 족다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅌ</td>
<td>t</td>
<td>like 't' in 'tip'</td>
<td>토끼</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㄹ</td>
<td>r/l</td>
<td>like 'l' in 'lip'; between vowels, like 'r' in 'rail'</td>
<td>라디오, 일요일</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅅ</td>
<td>s</td>
<td>like 's' in 'pass'; when followed by l (i), like 'sh' in 'she'</td>
<td>샘, 시간</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅈ</td>
<td>j</td>
<td>like 'j' in 'jump' when between vowels; sometimes like 'ch' in 'check'</td>
<td>지유</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅊ</td>
<td>ch</td>
<td>like 'ch' in 'check'</td>
<td>차</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅋ</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>like 'm' in 'mother'</td>
<td>메밀</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅂ</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>like 'b' in 'boy' when between vowels; sometimes like 'p' in 'pick'</td>
<td>배, 탑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅍ</td>
<td>p</td>
<td>like 'p' in 'pick'</td>
<td>파도</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅗ</td>
<td>/ng</td>
<td>The zero initial is used in syllables that begin with a vowel sound. When it follows a vowel at the end of a syllable, it is pronounced 'ng.' 안 = an; 네 = nyeong</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅂ</td>
<td>h</td>
<td>like English 'h' in 'hot'; when appearing before ㄱ, ㄷ, ㅂ, or ㅅ, it is not pronounced, but instead aspirates the following consonant: ㄱ (k), ㄷ (t), ㅂ (p), or ㅅ (ch)</td>
<td>하나</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Double Consonants**

| ㅌ | gg/kk | like 'k' in 'kept' but tensed | 까치 |
| ㄸ | dd/tt | like 't' in 'stop' but tensed | 땅 |
| ㅃ | bb/pp | like 'p' in 'picture' but tensed | 행 |

**Vowels**

| ㅅ | ss | like 's' in 'spit' but tensed; when followed by l (i), like 'sh' in 'she' but tensed | 사이올 |
| ㅈ | jj | like 'j' in 'jump' but tensed | 짱ظام |

**Vocatals**

**Pure Vowels**

| ㅗ | o | like 'o' in 'so' | 오늘 |
| ㅜ | eo | like 'u' in 'cup' | 어제 |
| ㅏ | a | like 'a' in 'father' | 아침 |
| ㅣ | i | like 'ee' in 'feet' | 이제 |
| ㅓ | u | like 'oo' in 'coop' | 우라 |
| ㅡ | eu | like 'u' in 'put' but pronounced further back in the throat | 음악 |

**Iotized Vowels**

| ㅗ | yo | like 'yo' in 'yo-yo' | 요즘 |
| ㅜ | yeo | like 'you' in 'young' | 여름 |
| ㅏ | ya | like 'ya' in 'yacht' | 약속 |
| ㅣ | yu | like 'you' in 'youth' | 우유 |

**Diphthongs**

| ㅐ | ae | like 'e' in 'set' | 재미 |
| ㅔ | yae | like 'yet' without 't' | 애기 |
| ㅓ | e | like 'a' in 'take' | 세번 |
| ㅔ | ye | like 'ay' | 세속 |
| ㅐ | wa | like 'wa' in 'water' | 파일 |
| ㅏ | wae | like 'wa' in 'way' | 외소 |
| ㅔ | oe | like 'we' in 'wet' | 피홈 |
| ㅚ | wo | like 'wa' in 'war' | 원 |
| ㅐ | we | like 'we' in 'weigh' | 램도 |
| ㅣ | wi | like 'wheea' in 'wheat' | 귀 |
| ㅡ | ui | like 'we,' only without a strong 'w' sound at the beginning | 의자, 우리의 |
Liaison

Korean has rules of liaison, which state that when certain sounds are combined, some of them will change to become new sounds. This happens in other languages as well; think of the difference in American English between “rate” and “rated”: the “t” sound changes to a “d” sound before “ed,” even though the spelling is unchanged. This is very similar to the Korean rules of liaison, which are as follows:

ㄱ, ㅋ, and ㄲ

Whenever you see ㄱ (k), ㅋ (p), or ㄲ (l) before ㄹ (l), ㅁ (m), or ㄴ (n), they are pronounced (ng), (m), and (n), respectively. ㄹ (l), if following any of the three above, also changes to an (n) sound through this liaison.

습 + 니 = 습니
seup + ni = seumnii
고맙습니다 (Thank you.)

ㄹ

When ㄹ (l) follows any consonant other than ㄹ (l) or ㄴ (n), it is pronounced (n). When ㄹ (l) and ㄴ (n) are together in any combination (ㄹ + ㄴ / ㄴ + ㄹ), they are pronounced as (ll).

Consonant Endings

Any word ending in a consonant and not followed by a particle will swallow the final consonant. This means that you will begin to pronounce the sound but not completely pronounce it.

ㅊ (ch), ㅋ (j), ㅅ (s), ㅆ (ss), and ㅎ (h)

When any of these consonants appear at the end of the word, they are swallowed, as above, but the beginning of the sound you produce will be the beginning of a (t) sound.

HOW HANGEUL WORKS

Let’s start to look at how these individual letters combine to form syllables.

○ + 틈 + 놓 = 만
ø + a + n = an
ㄴ + 디 + 오 = 높
n + yeo + ng = nyeong

 punto = 하
h + a = ha
ㅅ + 이 = 세
s + e = se
○ + 파 = 오
ø + yo = yo

Let’s also look at how these syllables combine to form words and phrases.

안 + 덴 + 히 + 세 + 요 = 안녕하세요?
An + nyeong + ha + se + yo = Annyeonghaseyo? (How are you?)

Again:

ㄱ + 더 = 고
г + threshold = go
ㅁ + 틈 + 바 = 맘
m + a + p = map
ㅅ + 이 + 높 = 습
s + eu + p = seup
ㄴ + 네 = 네
n + i = ni
ㄷ + 틈 = 다
d + a = da
고 + 맘 + 습 + 니 + 다 = 고맙습니다
Go + map + seup + ni + da = Gomapseumnida.*
Thank you (fml/polite).

*Notice the rule of liaison as it works in this expression.

HANGEUL PRACTICE

It is important that you learn the letters and syllables in order to have a good understanding of Korean. The lessons in this book beyond Lesson 5 will not include transliteration, so it is important to have a good grasp of Hangeul before proceeding. Get started practicing with the following exercises.

A. Write out the Hangeul for the syllables below.
1. gan
2. da
3. neol
4. rip
5. song
6. ap
B. Write the following phrases in Hangeul.
1. Eodi gaseyo? (Where are you going?)
2. Hangugeo leul haseyo? (Do you speak Korean?)
3. Jal hasi neun deyo. (You're doing well.)

C. For further practice, copy the Korean alphabet, repeating the sound of the letter as you write. Every time you come across a new Korean word in the lessons, cover the Hangeul and try to write it out following the transliteration. Do the same thing the opposite way until you have a good grasp of each letter and are better at recognizing syllables in Hangeul.

**ANSWER KEY**

A. 1. 갓 2. 다 3. 는 4. 립 5. 송 6. 알/앞 7. 호
8. 잘 9. 경 10. 음

---

**LEARN KOREAN**

**LESSON 1**

ان녕하세요?
*How Are You?*

In this lesson, you will learn how to greet people and how to ask everyday questions in a simple form. You'll also learn how to use one polite form, topic particles, and useful expressions. Throughout this lesson, you will be presented with a great deal of useful vocabulary as well as many interesting cultural facts to get you started learning Korean. Let's start with a bit of vocabulary warm-up!

**1A. VOCABULARY WARM-UP**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>한국어</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>안녕하세요?</td>
<td>Annyeonghaseyo?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>어디 가세요?</td>
<td>Eodi gaseyo?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>바빠요.</td>
<td>Bappayo.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>공부해요.</td>
<td>Gongbuhaeoyo.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>일해요.</td>
<td>Ilhaeoyo.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>요즘 어떻게?</td>
<td>Yojeum eottaeyo?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>뭐 하세요?</td>
<td>Mwo haseyo?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**1B. DIALOGUE**

Minho and Eunji know each other from the college that they went to together in Seoul. This morning, they run into each other at the bus stop.

민호: 은지씨, 안녕하세요?
Minho: Eunjissi, annyeonghaseyo?

은지: 어, 안녕하세요, 민호씨?
Eunji: Eo, annyeonghaseyo, Minhossi?

민호: 지금 어디 가세요?
Minho: Jigeum eodi gaseyo?

은지: 회사에 가요. 민호씨는 어디 가세요?
Eunji: I'm really busy these days. I have a lot of work. How about you, Minho?
Minho: I'm also busy. I have a lot of studying to do.
Eunji: What are you doing today?
Minho: I am studying today. And you, Eunji?
Eunji: I am working. Minho, by the way, what are you doing tomorrow? Are you also busy tomorrow?
Minho: Ah, I'm not busy tomorrow.
Eunji: Then let's go to a movie theater together tomorrow!
Minho: That's a great idea!

Comprehension Practice

Answer the following questions based on the dialogue.

1. What was the expression Minho used as a greeting to Eunji?
   a) 바쁘세요?
   b) 안녕하세요?
   c) 어디 가세요?

2. Where is Eunji going?
   a) 회사에 가요
   b) 학교에 가요
   c) 영화관에 가요

3. What do they want to do together?
   a) 공부해요
   b) 일해요
   c) 영화관에 가지요

4. 안녕하세요 means ________.
5. 바쁘세요 means ________.

1C. VOCABULARY

| 안녕하세요? | Annyeonghaseyo? | How are you? |
| (안녕하다) | (annyeonghada) | |

- 씨
  ssi
  Mr./Mrs./Ms.

어디
eodi
where

가세요 (가다)
gaseyo
going/go (hon.)

회사
hoesa
company, work

학교
hakgyo
school

* Words in parentheses show the verb's dictionary form; remove 다 to find the root form.
요즘
정말
바빠요 (바쁘다)
일
좋은 (좋다)
많아요 (많다)
어째요?
공부
-이/가
뭐
하세요 (하다)
오늘
내일
-도
안-
같이
생각
무슨
영화관
그림
그린데
-은/는
lately, these days
really
to be busy (hon.)
work
to be good
a lot of
How is/are ...?
study
subject particle
what
doing
what
today
tomorrow
also (post.)
not
together
thought
movie theater
then
however
topic particle

1D. KEY PHRASES

The following phrases are used by Koreans to say hello and good-bye, and in greeting someone in general.

안녕하세요?
Annyeonghaseyo?
How are you?
(fml/polite)

안녕하십니까?
Annyeonghashimninnaka?
How are you?
(fml/polite)

안녕?
Annyeong?
Hi. (infrml./non-polite)

안녕히 가세요!
Annyeonghigaseyo!
Good-bye!
(fml/polite)

안녕히 가십시오!
Annyeonghigashipshio!
Good-bye! (fml/polite)

잘가!
Jal ga!
Good-bye!
(infrml/non-polite)

조심해서 가세요!
Joshimhaeseogaseyo!
Good-bye!
(fml/polite)

어서 오세요!
Eoseo oseyo!
Welcome!
(fml/polite)

또 뵈요!
Tto boeyo!
See you again!
(infrml/polite)

다음에 뵈요!
Daeume boeyo!
See you later!
(infrml/polite)

요즘 좋아요.
Yojeum joayo.
I'm doing fine these days.

요즘 힘들어요.
Yojeum himdeureyo.
I'm having a hard time these days.

요즘 재미있어요.
Yojeum jaemisseyo.
I'm having fun these days.

As you can see, there are diverse speech styles in Korean that depend on whom you are addressing. You will learn more about these distinctions in the grammar section.

1E. CULTURE TOPIC 1

Grammatical subject is often omitted in a Korean sentence. For example, as an English speaker, you would never say "How are?" without a subject. However, Korean expressions often allow the omission of the subject. In fact, many Korean sentences have no grammatical subject, particularly in cases where the grammatical subject is obvious to both speakers in context. For this reason, some linguists have called Korean a "situational language," meaning that many expressions depend on the situation or conversational context.

1F. GRAMMAR

Honorifics

Korean has a highly developed polite and non-polite expression system incorporated into its grammar. The politeness appears either in a variety of honorific words used in the sentence or in the use of polite sentence endings.
In Korean, the verb is always located at the end of a sentence and combined with one of the endings above. It is important to choose the correct ending to be culturally correct in Korean, so study these carefully. Verb stems in Korean accompany other grammatical elements, such as tense, modals, politeness, and many other grammar patterns.

**Present Tense**

The simplest way of forming the present tense in Korean is by using the following formula:

verb stem + polite/friendly ending = present tense verb

| 가 + 요 = 가요 | Ga + yo = gayo | (I/You/She/He/They) go/goes. |
| 맨 + 요 = 맨야요 | Manha + yo = manayo | It's a lot. |

The verbs in Korean are not conjugated based on person. Look at the following examples:

| 가요. | Gayo. | (I/You/She/He/They) go/goes. |
| 먹어요. | Meogeoyo. | (I/You/She/He/They) eat/eats. |
| 운동해요. | Undonghaeyo. | (I/You/She/He/They) exercise/exercises. |

**Particles**

Particles are similar to such English words as in, at, to, by, with, etc. Korean particles, however, are always attached to a preceding word. Particles are used mostly with nouns, and sometimes with adverbs, to denote the role each one plays in the Korean sentence. For example, in the English sentence “I am going to school,” we recognize the subject and object based on word order and verb agreement. In Korean, particles are used to make this distinction. You can think of particles as “name tags” that indicate the noun’s function in the sentence. This particle attachment is one of the most important features in Korean. Particles are very basic yet very different features from English that initially confuse English speakers when learning Korean, so keep in mind the importance of the use of particles.

The first particle that we will learn is the topic particle. Topic particles are particularly important in Korean because of their versatile usage. Korean expressions use the topic particle when a speaker wants to intro-
duce a new topic, an idea, a person, or an object as the next main topic of a conversation. The topic particle has two alternatives, depending on whether the preceding sound is a consonant or a vowel:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>-은</th>
<th>eun</th>
<th>used after consonants</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-는</td>
<td>neun</td>
<td>used after vowels</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The consonant/vowel relations are fairly important in Korean grammar. Other particles that we will learn in following lessons also employ the same consonant/vowel alternation rules. Let's look at an example now of how we use the topic particles depending on the consonant/vowel relations.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>일</th>
<th>il</th>
<th>as for work</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>민지 내 conjugation</td>
<td>Minji</td>
<td>as for Minji</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Word Order

Korean word order is typically "subject-object-verb." However, Korean word order is relatively flexible when compared to English because of the Korean supplementary particles system. Particles act as a name tag for a word, signaling what part of speech the given word represents in the sentence. Therefore, even though a word may be moved around to different places within a sentence, a Korean native speaker can recognize the function of the word (and therefore, the meaning of the sentence) based on the kind of particle attached to it. Only the verb cannot move around; it must always appear at the end of the sentence. For this reason, Korean is often called a verb-final language. The following examples show this flexible word order:

저는 학교에 가요
I to school + go
Subj. + obj. + verb

학교에 저는 가요
To school + I + go
Obj. + subj. + verb

The meaning of the second sentence is closer to "As for school, I go there," or, "As for me, I go to school," depending on which word carries the accentuation in speech. The accented word receives more focus.

1G. READING

Read the following e-mail sent from Minho. Underline the words what you already recognize. Notice that some words are incorporated into a one-unit word chunk.

안녕하세요? 오래만입니다. 저는 회사에 잘 다니고 있어서, 그리고 밤에는 학교에도 가요. 매일 바쁘고 일도 많지만 이런 생활이 재미있어요.


How are you doing? It's been a long time. I am doing fine working for my company. And night, I also go to school. Although I am busy and I have a lot to do, I like this life; it is fun.

NEW VOCABULARY

| 오래만입니다. | Oraegannanminnida. | It's been a long time. (fml/polite) |
| 다니다 | danida | attend (v.) |
| 밤 | bam | night |
| 매일 | maeil | every day |
| 이런 | ireon | this type |
| 생활 | saenghwal | lifestyle |
| 재미있어요 | jaemiisseoyo | be interesting (v.) |

1H. CULTURE TOPIC 2

The Korean language has a long and widely-debated history. One theory on the early origins of Korean is that it branched out from the Ural-Altaic language family as Koreans gradually moved from the northern region of Asia to southern parts over the course of thousands of years during the prehistoric era. The classification of the Ural-Altaic language family is rather a theoretical grouping, and many linguists agree that some languages can be grouped according to the linguistic commonalities in sound and grammar rules. Some distinctive features of Ural-Altaic languages include the vowel harmony phenomenon, which is an integral
rule in Korean. The Ural-Altaic languages do not have gender distinction in grammar either, and there is no use of affixes. Many of the main features of Ural-Altaic languages arguably comply with the core grammar and sound structure of Korean language as well. Other languages in Ural-Altaic language family are Turkish, Manchurian, and Mongolian. Although Japanese language shows other similarities to Korean, such as word order and the use of particles, some linguists argue that Japanese does not belong to Ural-Altaic language family based on its underlying core sound rules and structural grammar features.

**EXERCISES**

A. Choose the best word from the list to complete the dialogue below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>안녕</th>
<th>annyeong</th>
<th>임이</th>
<th>iri</th>
<th>여덟</th>
<th>eotteoyo</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>저는</td>
<td>jeoneun</td>
<td>영화관</td>
<td>yeonghwagwan</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. _____ 1 _____ 하세요?
   A. _____ 1 _____ 하세요?
   B. 안녕하세요? 어디 가세요?
   A. 지금 저는 학교에 가요. 어디 가세요?
   B. 2. _____ 2 _____ 3 _____에 가요.
   A. 무슨 영화가 좋아요?
   B. "스타워즈"가 좋아요.
   A. 아, 요즘 4 _____ 많아요.
   B. 저도 일이 많아요.
   A. 공부는 5 _____ ?
   B. 공부도 할게 많아요!

B. Fill in the blanks with an appropriate topic particle.
1. 임 1 내일 일 안해요.
2. 내일 _____ 바빠요.
3. 옛자씨 _____ 오늘 쉬 해세요?
4. "호텔 룸워디" _____ 좋아요.
5. 어디 _____ 좋아요?
6. 오늘 _____ 공부 안 해요.

C. Using the given verbs in parentheses, complete the sentences with the infml/polite ending "-어/-아요.
1. (가다) 내일 같이 영화관에 _____.
   2. (좋다) 저는 공부가 _____.
   3. (바쁘다) 민호씨, 내일도 _____ ?
   4. ( 많다) 오늘은 일이 ________.
   5. (공부하다) 저는 학교에서 ________.
   6. (하다) 내일 학교에서 위 ________.

D. Answer the following questions in Korean. Include the expressions given in parentheses in your answers, and use the infml/polite speech style to complete the sentences.
1. 내일 학교에서 뭐해요? (to work) ________
2. 내일 일해요? (positive answer) ________
3. 내일 일해요? (to study) ________
4. 무슨 영화가 좋아요? (Hotel Rwanda) ________
5. 오늘 영화관에 가요? (positive answer) ________

E. Translate the following sentences into Korean.
1. How are you?
   2. I am busy.
   3. Where are you going? (informal polite)
   4. I am going to the movie theater.
   5. I have a lot of work.

**ANSWER KEY**

**Comprehension Practice**
1. 2. a) 회사에 가요 3. c) 영화관에 가요
   4. 안녕하세요 means "How are you?" 5. 바빠요 means "I am busy."

**Exercises**

A. 1. 안녕 2. 저는 3. 영화관 4. 일이 5. 여세요
   B. 1. 는 2. 은 3. 는 4. 는 5. 은
   C. 1. 가요 2. 좋아요 3. 바빠요 4. 많아요 5. 공부해요 6. 해요
   D. 1. 일해요. 2. 네, 내일 일해요. 3. 내일 공부해요. 4. 호텔 룸워디가 좋아요. 5. 네, 오늘 영화관에 가요.
   E. 1. 안녕하세요? 2. 저는 바빠요. 3. 어디 가세요?
   4. 영화관에 가요. 5. 일이 많아요.
INDEPENDENT CHALLENGE: KOREAN JOURNAL

Now it is your turn to practice Korean by starting a daily journal using the expressions and grammar you have learned in this lesson. Imagine how applicable the lessons will be in describing your daily life. Try to employ newly learned vocabulary items in your sentences and try to use more vocabulary as you proceed through the lessons. For example, in this lesson's journal entry, you can try using the topic particles wherever they are appropriate. Remember as well that sentences in Korean must end with some sort of appropriate ending, so use a friendly/polite ending for now in your journal. Try to follow the actual order of your daily actions. Write down the greeting portion of the conversations that you have throughout the day, and then try to translate them into Korean. You may want to use words from this lesson, such as school, work, to go, to be busy, tomorrow, today, movie theater, etc. Learning a new language doesn't happen in a day, even for geniuses! In fact, the only way you can be fluent in a foreign language is to structurally and intentionally repeat newly learned words and continue to practice by adding new words to your sentences. This exercise will continuously help you to build your vocabulary and grammar over time as our lessons progress.

LESSON

2

영화관이 어디에요?
Where Is the Movie Theater?

In Lesson 2, you will learn all about asking directions around South Korea's capital city, Seoul. By the end of the lesson, you will be able to ask and answer “where is...” questions, as well as know how to use subject particles and directional particles.

2A. VOCABULARY WARM-UP

여기 yeogi here
저기 jeogi there
어디에서 eodieseo from where
지하철 jihacheol subway
버스 beoseu bus
시청역 Sicheongyeok Sicheong (city hall) station
사람들 saramdeul people
오른쪽으로 oreunjogeuro to the right
뗘리 가요! Ppali gayo! Let's go quickly!

2B. DIALOGUE

Eunji and Minho are meeting each other in central Seoul. Eunji waves to Minho as he appears from the street.

은지: 민호씨, 여기예요!
Eunji: Minhossi, yeogiyeoyo!
민호: 아, 은지씨! 안녕하세요!
Minho: Ah, Eunjissi, annyeonghaseyo!
은지: 여기에요! 지금 어디에서 와요?
Eunji: Eoseoosyo! Jigeum eodieseo wayo?
Minho: Yeah, but where are they playing King Kong?
Eunji: Well… They’re playing it there!
Minho: Where?
Eunji: Can you see the coffee shop? It’s on the right side of that.
Minho: Ah, I see. Thank you.
Eunji: Then let’s go to the theater.
Minho: Yes, let’s do that!

**Comprehension Practice**

Answer the following questions based on the dialogue.

1. Where are Minho and Eunji going?
   a) 학교
   b) 회사
   c) 영화관

2. Where did Minho come from?
   a) 시청역
   b) 커피숍
   c) 교보 문고

3. How do you say “I see”?
   a) 여기서세요
   b) 고맙습니다
   c) 알겠습니다

4. 어디에요 means ________.

5. 네 means ________.

**2C. VOCABULARY**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>여기에요</td>
<td>yeogiyeo</td>
<td>(be) here (hon.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>와요 (오다)</td>
<td>wayo</td>
<td>come, coming</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>시청역</td>
<td>Sicheongyeok</td>
<td>Sicheong (city hall) station</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>지하철</td>
<td>jihacheol</td>
<td>subway</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>예소요</td>
<td>eseoyo</td>
<td>from</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사람(들)</td>
<td>saram (deul)</td>
<td>person(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>너무</td>
<td>neomu</td>
<td>too much</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>교보 문고</td>
<td>Gyobo mungo</td>
<td>Gyobo bookstore (the largest bookstore in Seoul)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>버스</td>
<td>beoseu</td>
<td>bus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>타세요 (타다)</td>
<td>tasseoyo</td>
<td>got on, rode</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2D. KEY PHRASES

The following phrases are frequently used by Koreans to say "thank you" and "you're welcome."

고맙습니다.   Gomapseumnida.   Thank you. (fml/polite)
고마워요.    Gomawoyo.  Thank you. (infml/polite)
고마워.       Gomawo.   Thank you. (infml/non-polite)
감사합니다.   Gamsahamnida. Thank you. (fml/polite)
감사해요.    Gamsahaeyo. Thank you. (infml/polite)
 obrigado.    Ttangkyu. Thank you. (colloquial; from English)

When someone uses any of these expressions, you should answer with one of the following phrases to show respect.

천만해요.     Cheonmaneyo. Not at all.
괜찮아요.     Guenchanayo. It's all right./I don't mind.
벌 말씀해요.  Byeol malseumeulyo. You don't need to say that.
벌 거 아니에요.  Byeol geo aniyeyo. It's nothing.

2E. CULTURE TOPIC 1

Korean is called a verb-final language. The verb will always appear at the end of the sentence. Apart from the location of the verb, general word order is relatively flexible depending on the speaker's intention. When the speaker wishes to put more emphasis on an element, he or she will place it at the beginning of the sentence. For this reason, particles are necessary in Korean to determine the function of each word in the sentence. Otherwise, flexible word order would yield just a random assignment of meaning. Remember that the most common word order in Korean is subject-object-verb (SOV) pattern for general statements.

2F. GRAMMAR

Subject Particles

Subject particles are attached to the preceding nouns or pronouns to make a given noun (or pronoun) the subject of a sentence. As we previously observed in Lesson 1, a noun with an attached subject particle looks like just one word after the binding. Remember that in Korean, particles (including the subject particle, object particle, location particle, topic particle, and other postpositions) always come after the noun.

Let's take a look at the subject particles. You already saw a few examples of subject particles in the dialogues in Lesson 1 and this lesson. Remember how the topic particles -은/-는 alternate depending on whether the preceding sound is a consonant or a vowel? The subject particles work the same way. There are two alternatives.

|   -이   |   -가   | used after
|  -i   |  -ga   | consonants
|  used after vowels

Lesson 2
The following example demonstrates this alternation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>역 (“k” sound, consonant) + 이</th>
<th>yeok + i</th>
<th>station (sub.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>버스 (“eu” sound, vowel) + 가</td>
<td>beoseu + ga</td>
<td>bus (sub.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>시청역이 저기 있어요.</td>
<td>Sicheongyeogi jeogi isseoyo.</td>
<td>Sicheong station is over there.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>버스가 여기 와요.</td>
<td>Beoseuga yeogi wayo.</td>
<td>The bus is coming here.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

"Where Is . . ." Expressions

Imagine how often you use the expression "where is . . ." in English—nearly every day! It is very useful to learn this expression in Korean right off the bat. The good news is that this question form in Korean is very easy. Just place 어디예요 (eodiyeo) after the subject. 어디 (eodi) is the question word "where," and 예요 (yeo) is the polite form of the verb "to be." Look at the following examples.

SUBJECT + 어디 + 예요

| 시청역이 어디예요?                 | Sicheongyeogi eodiyeo? | Where is Sicheon station? |
| 고보 문고가 어디예요?               | Gyobo mungoga eodiyeo? | Where is Gyobo bookstore? |

When you ask a question in Korean, raise your intonation just like you would do in English. To answer "where is . . ." questions, you will need a location particle to indicate in, at, on, to, etc., along with the verb 있어요 (isseoyo). Take a look at the suggested answers to the above questions.

-예 (e - in, at, on, to)
  - 학교 에 가요. | Hakyoe gayo. | I am going to school. |
  - 영화관 에 들어 봐요. | Yeonghwagwane mureo boayo. | Let's ask at/in the movie theater. |

-에서 (esseo - in, at, on [with action verb], from)
  - 영화는 어디에서 해요? | Yeonghwaneun eodieseo haeyo? | (At) where are they playing the movie? |
  - 고보 문고에서 해요. ("from” expression) | Gyobo mungoeseo haeyo. | From Gyobo bookstore. |

You will learn more directional expressions as we venture into future lessons.

Location Particles -예 and -에서

There are two important location particles in Korean. Each of these two location particles has a different use. First, the particle -예(>-e) is used to indicate in, at, on, or to. It can also indicate a specific point in time, as you'll see in the dialogue of Lesson 4. The other location particle, -에서 (essoe) is used to indicate a place where a certain action takes place; -에서 is also used to mean from in English. Let's take a look at the two pairs of examples.

Subject + In, At, On, To

| 시청역이 어디예요? | Sicheongyeogi eodiyeo? | Where is Sicheon station? |
| 고보 문고가 어디예요? | Gyobo mungoga eodiyeo? | Where is Gyobo bookstore? |

When you ask a question in Korean, raise your intonation just like you would do in English. To answer "where is . . ." questions, you will need a location particle to indicate in, at, on, to, etc., along with the verb 있어요 (isseoyo). Take a look at the suggested answers to the above questions.

-예 (e - in, at, on, to)
  - 학교 에 가요. | Hakyoe gayo. | I am going to school. |
  - 영화관 에 들어 봐요. | Yeonghwagwane mureo boayo. | Let's ask at/in the movie theater. |

-에서 (esseo - in, at, on [with action verb], from)
  - 영화는 어디에서 해요? | Yeonghwaneun eodieseo haeyo? | (At) where are they playing the movie? |
  - 고보 문고에서 해요. ("from” expression) | Gyobo mungoeseo haeyo. | From Gyobo bookstore. |
2G. READING

Read the following daily planner entry written by Minho. Underline the sentences that you understand, and see if you can identify some new vocabulary.

오늘은 공부를 하고 영화관에 가요. 먼저 버스를 타요. 그리고 지하철을 타요. 지하철을 타고 시청앞에서 내려요. 그리고 영화관에 가요. 영화관 이름은 ‘단성사’예요. 그리고 영화관 앞에서 음식점에 안나요. 여제 약속을 해서 오늘 같이 영화를 볼어요. 우리는 커피를 마셔요. 영화는 ‘킹콩’이에요!


*Today I am studying and going to the movie theater. First, I get on the bus. And I get on the subway. I ride the subway and get off at the Sicheon station. I go to the movie theater. The name of the movie theater is Dan Seong Sa. And I meet Eunjii in front of the movie theater. We made an appointment yesterday to watch a movie together today. We drink coffee. The movie is King Kong!*

NEW VOCABULARY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>고</th>
<th>go</th>
<th>(conj.) and</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>그리고</td>
<td>geurigo</td>
<td>(adv.) and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>내려요</td>
<td>naeryeoyo</td>
<td>get off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>단성사</td>
<td>Dan Seong Sa (the oldest theater in Seoul)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>앞</td>
<td>ap</td>
<td>in front of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>어제</td>
<td>eoe</td>
<td>yesterday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>약속</td>
<td>yaksok</td>
<td>appointment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>커피</td>
<td>keopi</td>
<td>coffee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>마시요</td>
<td>masieyo</td>
<td>drink</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>킹콩</td>
<td>King Kong</td>
<td>King Kong</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

EXERCISES

A. Choose the best word from the list to complete the dialogue below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>에서요 eseoyo</th>
<th>안녕하세요 annyeonghaseyo</th>
<th>오세요 oseyo</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>고말씀입니다 gomapseumnida</td>
<td>어디 eodi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A. 민호씨, 1 2 3 ?
Minhossi, 1 2 3 ?

B. 아, 음식점 안녕하세요?
Uh, Eunjissi, annyeonghaseyo?

A. 여기서 2 지급 3 에서 약요?
Eoseo 2, jigeum 3 eseo wayo?

B. 시청 앞 지하철에서요, 음식점 몇요?
Sicheongyeok jihaecholeseyo. Eunjissineunyo?

A. 교보 문고 4 5 .
Gyobo mungo 4 5 .

B. 네, 그런데 영화관에 어디에요?
Ne, geureonde yeonghwagwani eodiyoyo?

A. 저기 커피숍 보이세요?
Jeogi keopishon boiseyo?

B. 아, 저기요! 5 6 .
Ah, jeogiyoyo! 5 6 .
B. Fill in the blanks with an appropriate particle.
1. 지금 어디 ( ) 와요?
   Jigeum eodi ( ) wayo?
2. 영화관 ( ) 어디예요?
   Yeonghwagwan ( ) eodiyeoyo?
3. 저녁철 ( ) 저기예요.
   Jihacheol ( ) jeogiyeoyo.
4. 오늘 ( ) 안 바빠요.
   Oneul ( ) an bappyayo.
5. 무슨 생각 ( ) 있어요?
   Museun saenggak ( ) isseoyo?

C. Mark the best place in the sentence to insert the words given in parentheses. (No transliteration to help you here! Keep practicing your Hangul; by Lesson 5 you'll have to know it well enough to read it without the help of transliteration.)
1. (은지씨)
   ① 지금 ② 어디 ③ 가세요 ④?
2. (오늘)
   ① 학교에서 ② 민호씨가 ③ 공부해요 ④.
3. (김공)
   ① 그런데 ② 영화관이 ③ 어디예요 ④?
4. (글쎄요)
   ① 사람이 ② 자기 ③ 참 ④ 많네요.
5. (영화 끝까지요)
   ① 은지씨 ② 그림 ③ 지금 ④.
6. (영화관에서)
   ① 민호씨 ② 와요 ③?

D. Translate the following sentences into Korean.
1. I am coming from the subway station now.
2. Excuse me, but . . .
3. Where is bus?
4. There are so many people.
5. From the movie theater.

ANSWER KEY
Comprehension Practice
1. c) 영화관  2. a) 시청으로  3. c) 알겠습니다
4. 어디예요 means "where is/where are."  5. 네 means "yes."

Exercises
A. 1. 안녕하세요 2. 오세요 3. 어디 4. 예세요 5. 고맙습니다
B. 1. 에서 2. 이 3. 이 4. 은 5. 이
C. 1, ① 2, ① 3, ② 4, ① 5, ④ 6, ②
D. 1. 저는 지금 저녁밥에서 와요 2. 실향하지만 3. 버스가 어디에 있어요 4. 사람들 너무 많아요 5. 영화관에서요.
INDEPENDENT CHALLENGE

Now it's time to use what we learned from this lesson in your journal. This time, we are going to use some information from the Seoul City official website at http://english.seoul.go.kr. Go to the website and find some interesting facts about Seoul. If you don't have a computer, look up information on Seoul in an encyclopedia or dictionary. Name three different places, and explain where they are. Try to use subway stations, some location names, and location particles in your sentences. Find three places that you'd like to visit and make a plan on how you'd get from one place to another. Don't forget to practice focus and location particles and alternations in each case.

LESSON

이거 얼마예요?

How Much Is It?

In this lesson, you will learn how to ask the price of goods, and how to say the amount of money, along with the relevant noun counters. You will also learn vocabulary for buying clothes at a clothing store, and how to express "this" and "that." Let's get started with a warm-up of key vocabulary!

3A. VOCABULARY WARM-UP

옷가게 otgage clothing store
바지 baji pants
청바지 cheongbaji blue pants/jeans
필요해요 piryohaeyo to need
맞겠는데요 matgenneundeoyo to fit
어울려요 eoulryeoyo (clothes) to go well
세일 가격이에요 Seil gagyegiyeoyo. It's the sale price.
얼마예요? Elomayeyo? How much is it?
한 벌 주세요. Han beol juseyo. One pair, please.

3B. DIALOGUE

Minho and Eunji enjoyed their movie. Now, they are going shopping for clothes in the area around the movie theater.

민호: 은지씨, 여기 가요.
Minho: Eunjissi, yeogi gayo.

은지: 어디요?
Eunji: Eodiyo?

민호: 여기 이 옷가게에서 세일을 해요. 삐한 바지가 좀 필요해요.
Minho: Yeogi i otgagessoe seiruleul haeyo. Sireun bajiga jom piryohae yo.

온지: 아, 그래요? 그럼 같이 가요. 저는 스웨터가 좀 필요해요.


민호: 이 착비지가 저한테 잘 맞아요. 어때요?

Minho: I cheongbajiga jeohante jalmajayo. Eottaeyo?

온지: 어, 좋아요. 저는 저 스웨터가 좋아요. (Eunji finds a sweater and tries it on.)


민호: 그 색깔이 온지씨에게 아주 잘 어울리어요. 근데, 좀 큰 것 같아요.

Minho: Geu saeakkali Eunjissiege ajulal eouulleyeoyo. Geunde, jom keun geot gatayo.

온지: 그래요? 여기 어디 작은 사이즈가 있어요?

Eunji: Geuraeyo? Yeogi eodi jageun saiyeuga isseo yo?

민호: 네, 잠깐만요. 여기 있어요. 가격은 18000 원이에요. 세일 가격이며요.


온지: 아, 그래요? 이 바지는 얼마예요?

Eunji: Ah, geuraeyo? I bajineun colmayeyo?

민호: 25000 원이에요. 이 바지도 20% 세일 가격이며요. (looking at the clerk) 이 바지한 벌 주세요.

Minho: Iman ocheon woniyeoyo. I bajido 20% (ship prosentu) seil gagyeogiyeyo. I baji han beol juseyo.

온지: (also looking at the clerk) 저도 이 스웨터 한 벌 주세요.

Eunji: Jeodo i sweteo han beol juseyo.

민호: 세 스웨터가 아주 좋아요.

Minho: Sae sweteoga aju joayo.

온지: 네, 감사합니다. 민호씨 덕분이에요. 계산해 주세요.


Minho: Eunji, let's go here.

Eunji: Where?

Minho: There's a sale in this clothing store here. Actually, I need a pair of pants.

Eunji: Ah, is that so? Then, let's go together. I need a sweater.

Minho: These blue jeans fit me well. How are they?

Eunji: They are good. I like that sweater. (Eunji finds a sweater and tries it on.)

Minho: That color goes really well on you. But it looks a bit big [for you].

Eunji: Is that so? Is there a smaller size here?

Minho: Yes, just a moment. Here it is. The price is 18000 won, and it's the sole price.

Eunji: Ah, is that so? Then how much are these pants?

Minho: They are 25000 won. Those pants are on 20% sale also. (looking at the clerk) Please give me a pair of these pants.

Eunji: (also looking at the clerk) I'll take this sweater, please.

Minho: That new sweater looks very good.

Eunji: Thank you. Thanks to you. (to the clerk) Please ring it up.

Comprehension Practice

Answer the following questions based on the dialogue.

1. Where are Minho and Eunji?
   a) 영화관   b) 옷가게   c) 시청

2. What does Eunji buy?
   a) 스웨터   b) 바지   c) 색깔

3. How much does Minho pay for his clothes?
   a) 18000 원   b) 25000원   c) 20000원
3C. VOCABULARY

가 봐요 (가다/보다)  Ga boayo . . .  Let's go and see . . .
이  i  this
이거  igeo  this thing
gu  that
gugeo  that thing
ejoo  that thing over there
ejoogeo  that thing over there
to be a clothing store
sireung  in fact, actually
baji  pants
jon  well, a little bit
to need
pilyohaeyeo  pilyohaeyeo  to need
geureoom  then
saekkal  color
jal eoulryeoyo  to fit well
keungeot  big thing
gateundeyo  it seems . . .
jageun sajeujeu  small size
jamkkannamyo  wait a second
yeogi innyeo  here it is
gagueok  price
Geuraeyo?  Is that so?
won  won, Korean currency
han beol  one pair (noun counter for clothes)
juseyo  to give

입겠네요? (입다)  Ipkenneyo?  (I) would be wearing, won't I?
Meotisseoyo!  You look cool!
Nalssinhanhahoeoyo.  You look thin.
Jal eoulryeoyo.  It fits you well.
Saekkali cham johayo.  It's a really nice color.
Saekkali jal eoulryeoyo.
Eolmayeyo?  The color suits you well.
Jom ssage hae juseyo.  How much is this?
Neomu bissayo.  A little bit of a discount, please.
Han beol juseyo.  That's too expensive.
Du boel juseyo.  I'll take one. (Give me one garment.)
Se beol juseyo.  I'll take two. (Give me two garments.)
Dareun saek isseoyo?  Do you have another color?
Keun sajeujeu isseoyo?  Do you have a bigger size?
Jageun sajeujeu isseoyo?  Do you have a smaller size?
Dareun sajeujeu isseoyo?  Do you have another size?
Gyesanhanhahoe seurigeoseumnida.  Let me calculate the total.

3D. KEY PHRASES

The following phrases are the most common questions and comments you will hear while shopping for clothes in Korea.

모습이 어때요?  You look cool!
남신해 보여요.  You look thin.
잘 어울리네요?  It fits you well.
색깔이 잘 좋아요.  It's a really nice color.
색깔이 잘 어울리네요.  The color suits you well.
얼마예요?  How much is this?
옷 씌지 해 주세요.  A little bit of a discount, please.
너무 비싸요.  That's too expensive.
한 벌 주세요.  I'll take one. (Give me one garment.)
두 벌 주세요.  I'll take two. (Give me two garments.)
세 벌 주세요.  I'll take three. (Give me three garments.)
다른 색 있어요?  Do you have another color?
큰 사이즈 있어요?  Do you have a bigger size?
작은 사이즈 있어요?  Do you have a smaller size?
다른 사이즈 있어요?  Do you have another size?
계산해 드리겠습니다.  Let me calculate the total.
3E. Culture Topic 1

In Korea there are two kinds of shopping areas for natives: department stores and various independent stores located downtown, and markets in various neighborhoods. The downtown shopping districts, such as Seoul's Myeong Dong and Appujeong Dong areas have fashionable department stores. In open markets such as Namdaemun and Itaewon, people often haggle over prices. A few cultural tips may help find the best values. According to custom in almost any shop, the first customer is an important sale. Koreans believe the initial sale will determine the tempo of the day's activities. In other words, if the first customer leaves without buying anything then business will likely be slow that day. Conversely, a large first sale is a sign of good luck. Therefore, shoppers who visit a store early may be able to bargain for the best price of the day. Don't go window shopping in the morning! You may ruin the shopkeeper's day if you buy nothing.

3F. Grammar

Demonstrative Indexes 이, 그, 저

In English, we use demonstrative pronouns to differentiate between two objects. For example, to refer to something located closer to a speaker, the speaker will use "this" when referring to the object. On the other hand, we use "that" for something located farther away from the speaker. Korean has three distinctive indexes similar to our demonstrative pronouns. 이 (i) is compatible with "this," when referring to a close object similar to English. 그 (geu) is similar to "that" while 저 (jeo) refers "that thing over there." 저 is also used to refer to an abstract notion as well as a physical location, and it may be used in academic papers, newspaper articles, or essays. 저 is most likely used to index a physically distant object.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>이</th>
<th>i</th>
<th>this</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>그</td>
<td>geu</td>
<td>that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>저</td>
<td>jeo</td>
<td>that over there</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Using this three-dimensional system, there are two more groups of expressions that we can look at. First are the expressions for "this thing," "that thing," and "that thing over there."

| 이거 | igeo | this thing    |
| 그거 | geugeo | that thing   |
| 저거 | jeugeo | that thing over there |

Next, we have "here," "there," and "over there," which we've partly seen in Lessons 1 and 2.

| 여기 | yeogi | here       |
| 거기 | geogi | there      |
| 저기 | jeogi | over there |

These expressions are used as one word in Korean, so it is very useful to remember this reference system.

Object Particles

So far we've learned the topic particles -은/는 and the subject particles -이/가. We learned that particles are attached to a word to mark the grammatical function of that particular word. We also learned that those particles alternate depending on whether the preceding sound is a vowel or a consonant. Now let's learn the object particles. Object particles are attached to the grammatical object in a sentence. The word that receives an action is the grammatical object. There are two kinds of object particles.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>을</th>
<th>eul</th>
<th>use after consonant ending</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>률</td>
<td>leul</td>
<td>use after vowel ending</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the dialogue, we saw some examples of use of object particles.

이 옷가게에서 세일을 해요.  | I otgaseoons saleleul haeyo.  | This clothing store is having (does) a sale. |
스웨터를 좀 보겠습니다. | Swetaleul jom bogesseoyoyo. | I'd like to look around for some sweaters. |
Numbers 1–10 and Noun Counters

Counting numbers in Korean uses two systems: the Sino-Korean system and the Korean-Korean system. The Sino-Korean system is generally used (1) to count larger numbers such as an amount of money or (2) to show nominal figures.

Example of Sino-Korean counting system:

1 = 일 il
10 = 십 sip
100 = 백 baek
$100 = 백불 baekbul (a hundred dollars)
101 = 백일 baekil
110 = 백십 baeksip
1000 = 천 cheon

The Korean-Korean system is generally used for ordinal numbers (first, second, third… ) or with smaller number noun countes. Noun counters are similar to English quantifiers. For example: a cup of coffee, three sacks of grain, two bottles of beer, etc. Korean has a highly expressive feature in this part of grammar. The noun counters are always used when counting things. In the dialogue you observed 한 벌 (han beol) which means "one pair (of garment)." 하나 (hana) or 한 (han) means "one," and 벌 (beol) is called a "noun counter" in Korean. The noun-counter is attached to the number to show the nature of the item being counted. Notice that 하나 (hana) changes to 한 (han) when attached to a noun counter; this occurs for numbers from one through four. We've listed both forms below. There are many types of counters in Korean, but we'll show you some of the most common ones in this lesson.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>KOREAN-KOREAN NUMBERS</th>
<th>COUNTING OBJECTS</th>
<th>NOUN COUNTERS</th>
<th>COMBINED EXPRESSION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 = 하나 hana; 한 han</td>
<td>garment</td>
<td>-벌 beol</td>
<td>한 벌 han beol one garment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 = 두 du; 두 myeong</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 = 세 세; 세 se</td>
<td>general small</td>
<td>-개 gae</td>
<td>세 개 se gae three things</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 = 넷 net; 네 ne</td>
<td>age</td>
<td>-살 sal</td>
<td>네 살 ne sal four years old</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 = 다섯 deset</td>
<td>glass/cup</td>
<td>-전 jan</td>
<td>다섯 전 deset jan five glasses/cups of...</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ber this type of exception with a subject particle as a pattern. Memorize this expression with the subject particles: 이/가 있어요.

3G. READING

Read the sales advertisement from a Korean store. Underline the words that you recognize.

이 옷가게에서 안 사시면 다른 옷가게에서도 못 삽니다!! 사요, 쌈!! 여름 드, 파격적 대 세일!! 자, 여기 이 잘 어울리는 장소를 많이 많이 사 가세요! 모든 품목 단돈 5000원에 대박 세일!!

I otgaseeso an sasimyeon dareun otgaseeseodo mot samnida!! Ssayo, ssa!! Yeoreum ot, panyeokjeok dae seil!! Ja, yeogi i jal eoulrineun oteuleul mani mani sa gaseyo! Modeun pummok dandon o cheon wone daebak seil!!

You can’t buy in other stores if you don’t buy it in this store!! Cheap, cheap!! Summer clothes, sale explosion!! Buy many, many clothes in bulk that suit you well! All items are 5000 won, big blowout sale!!

NEW VOCABULARY

안  an  none, not
사시면  sasimyeon  if not buy
다른  dareun  different
못  mot  cannot
파격적  panyeokjeok  shocking, explosive, surprising
사세요  saseyo  please buy
모든  modeun  all
품목  pummok  item(s)
단돈  dandon  only this much money
대박  daebak  blowout

3H. CULTURE TOPIC 2

Made in Korea

From the 1990s through to the early 20th century, we have seen an increase in the amount of merchandise manufactured in China. During the 1970s and 1980s, however, a great deal of merchandise was imported from Korea, including stuffed animals, children's toys, stationeries, clothes, etc. As a developing country recovering from the Korean War (1950–1953), Korea was able to build major highways, factories, and other facets of their infrastructure in the 1970s and 1980s. After the Korean War, huge manufacturing factories were rapidly erected, creating more employment, and improving the Korean economy overall. Many manufacturing projects were initially supported by the Korean government as an effort to rebuild a nation deeply affected by war. Participants of these projects included Hyundai, Samsung, and LG. Nowadays, more and more Korean manufacturing factories are moving to mainland China, passing on their manufacturing technologies to their Chinese branches. In the meantime, some South Korean companies are building a factory complex in the North Korean region of Gae Seong, located only an hour away from Seoul. This factory project was endorsed by both the South and North Korean governments in 2004 to improve North Korea’s economy. These days, South Koreans are more interested in development in industrial technology, bio-industry, luxury cars, and robot technologies.

EXERCISES

A. Choose the best word from the list to complete the dialogue below.

바지가  bajiga  비싸요  bissayo  옷가게  otgage
잘 어울리요  jal eoullyeyeo  일마예요  eolnayeyo

| A. 여기 이, _____ 1 _____ 에서 세일을 해요. 가 복요. |
| B. 어, 친구 저도 _____ 2 _____ 필요하다. |

A. 그래세요? 그럼 같이 가요. 이거 어때요?
B. 아, _____ 3 _____!
A. 감사합니다. 이거 _____ 4 _____ ?
C. 38000원 입니다.
A. 어머, 너무 _____ 5 _____ !

B. Circle the appropriate form of the object particle.

1. 이 스웨터 (을/를) 좀 보겠어요.
2. 이 바지를 가격(이/가) 얼마예요?
3. 저 색깔(이/가) 아주 잘 어울려요.
4. 이 옷가게(에/에서) 세일을 해요.
5. 네, 그 바지를 (은/는) 32000원 입니다.
6. 이 색깔(을/를) 주세요.
C. Translate the following Korean sentences into English.
1. 그 바지 한 쌍 주세요.
2. 이거 세일 가격이에요.
3. 적은 사이즈 있어요?
4. 저는 스웨터 좀 불려요.
5. 그럼 같이 가요.

D. Translate the following English sentences into Korean.
1. There's a sale (they are having a sale) in here!
2. Ah, is that so?
3. This thing would fit me well.
4. That color suits you.
5. Do you have a bigger size?

**ANSWER KEY**

**Comprehension Practice**
1. b) 옷가게 2. a) 스웨터 3. b) 2500원 4. “Sale price” in Korean is 세일 가격. 5. “필요해요” means “is/are necessary.”

**Exercises**
A. 1. 옷가게 2. 바지가 3. 잘 어울려요 4. 얼마에요 5. 비싸요
B. 1. 옷 2. 이 3. 이 4. 에서 5. 는 6. 을
C. 1. Give me that pair of pants. 2. This is the sale price. 3. Do you have a smaller size? 4. I will take a look at the sweaters. 5. Then let's go together.
D. 1. 여기에서 세일을 해요! 2. 아, 그래요? 3. 이거 저한테 잘 맞겠는데요. 4. 그 색깔이 잘 어울려요. 5. 큰 사이즈 있어요?

**INDEPENDENT CHALLENGE**

Now it's time to bring what you learned from this lesson into your real life! Go over the vocabulary, grammar, and key phrases you learned in this lesson on how to ask prices and how to make some comments on clothes. Find the names of some commodities in Korean using the free Yahoo! web dictionary at http://kr.dic.yahoo.com/search/all. Name ten things that you purchased recently, and make notes in your journal about your purchases, including the item, the price, and anything else you might already be able to express in Korean.
In this lesson, you will learn vocabulary about everyday activities and the daily routine. You will also learn expressions relating to daily life and activities, including the expressions for days of the week and the use of "from/to" expressions. You will learn how to ask for the time and answer appropriately. Let's get started with some vocabulary!

4A. VOCABULARY WARM-UP

어떻게 지내요?  Eotteoke jinaeyo?  How are you spending time?
매일  maeil  every day
월요일  wolyoil  Monday
몇 시...?  Myeot si...?  What time...?
퇴근이예요  toegeuniyeyo  (I) get off work
대학원 생활  daehagwon saengwhal  graduate school life
도서관하고 연구실  doseoguanhago yeongusil  library and lab
꽃가게  kkotgage  flower shop
배달을 해요  baedaleul haeyo  (I) make deliveries

4B. DIALOGUE

Minho and Eunji are sitting on the terrace of a coffee shop after shopping.

민호: 은지씨, 매일 바빠요? 주중에 어떻게 지내요?

Minho: Eunjissi, maeil bappayo? Jujunge eotteoke jinaeyo?
은지: 네, 월요일부터 금요일까지 일해야.
Eunji: Ne, wolyoilbuteo geumyoilkkaji ilhaeyo.
민호: 몇 시부터 몇 시까지 일해야요?
Minho: Myeot sibuteo myeot sikkaji ilhaeyo?
은지: 아침 여덟 시 반부터 다섯 시까지 일해야요.
Eunji: Achim yeodeol si banbuteo daseot sikkaji ilhaeyo.
민호: 회사는 어디에 있어요?
Minho: Hoesaneun eodie isseoyo?
은지: 회사는 종로 3가에 있어요. 지하철로 회사에 가요.
민호: 저도 매일 학교에 가요. 그런데 생각보다 대학원 생활이 어려워요.
Minho: Jeodo mael hagyoee gayo. Geureonde saenggakboda daehagwon saenghuali eoryeowooyo.
은지: 매일 가요? 어디에서 공부해요?
Eunji: Mael gayo? Eodieeseo gonghuhaeyo?
민호: 학교 도서관하고 연구실이에요.
Minho: Hagyo daseoguanhago yeongusileseooyo.
은지: 주말에는 휴해야요?
Eunji: Jumaleneun mweohaeyo?
민호: 주말에도 일해야요. 토요일하고 일요일에 꽃가게에서 배달을 해요.
Minho: Jumalede ilhaeyo. Toyoilhago ilyoile kkotgageeseo baedaleul haeyo.
은지: 저는 목요일 밤에는 살사 댄스 수업에 가요.
Eunji: Jeoneun mogyoil bameneun salsa daeseu sueobe gayo.
민호: 살사이요? 왜, 재미있겠어요!
Minho: Salsayoo? Wa, jaemitekketteyo!
은지: 그런데 무슨 공부를 해요?
Eunji: Geuleonde museum gongbuleul haeho.
민호: Ne, jeonja gonghagiyo.

Minho: Eunji, are you busy every day? How are you spending time during the weekdays?
Eunji: Well, I work from Monday to Friday.
Minho: From when to when do you work?
Eunji: I go to work at eight thirty in the morning. And I get off work at five.
Minho: Where is your company?
Eunji: My company is at jongno 3ga. I go to work by subway.
Minho: I also go to school every day. By the way, graduate school life is harder than I thought.
Eunji: Do you go every day? Where do you study?
Minho: In the school library and the lab.
Eunji: What do you do on weekends?
Minho: I work on weekends. I make deliveries for the flower shop on Saturday and Sunday.
Eunji: I go to salsa dancing class on Thursday night.
Minho: Salsa dancing? Wow, that must be interesting!
Eunji: By the way, what do you study?
Minho: Oh, it's electrical engineering.

Comprehension Practice

Answer the following questions based on the dialogue.

1. Where does Eunji go on Thursday nights?
   a) 학교
   b) 전자 공학
   c) 댄스

2. Where does Minho go every day?
   a) 대학원
   b) 회사
   c) 꽃가게

3. What time does Eunji get to work?
   a) 8:20 a.m.
   b) 8:30 a.m.
   c) 9:00 a.m.

Lesson 4
4C. VOCABULARY

메일 maeil every day
주중에 jujunge during weekdays
지내요 (지내다) jinaeyo to spend time
월요일 Wolyoil Monday
금요일 Geunyoil Friday
-부터 -buteo from
-까지 -kkaji to
로 ro by
몇 시…? Myoet si…? What time…?
아침 achim morning, breakfast
저녁/저녁식사 jeonyeok/jeonyeokshigsa evening/supper (dinner)
 점심/점심시간 jeomshim/jeomshimshigan lunch/lunchtime
여덟시 반 yeodeolsi ban eight thirty
퇴근이해야 toeguneunyeo off of work
종로 3가 Jongno sa mga Jongno 3ga (the central business area of Seoul)
생각보다… saenggakhoda… is harder than I thought
어려워요 (어렵다) eoryeowoyo
대학원 생활 daehagwon saenghwal graduate school life
do 서관 doseoguan library
-하고 -hago and (between nouns)
연구실 yeongusil laboratory
꽃가게 kkotgage flower shop
배달 baedal delivery
목요일 Mogyoil Thursday
밤 bam nighttime

4D. KEY PHRASES

Let’s take a look at some other interesting expressions that are useful for describing daily activities. Various expressions introduced here will help you to communicate your actions throughout the day.

일어나요 ileonayo (I) get up
사워해요 shawohaeyo (I) shower
밥 먹어요 bap meogeoyo (I) eat (meals)
운동해요 undonghaeyo (I) exercise
수업에 가요 suebe gayo (I) go to class
집에 가요 jibe gayo (I) go home
친구를 만나요 chinguleul manayyo (I) meet a friend
시장가요 sjangboayo (I) go grocery shopping
은행에 가요 eunhaenge gayo (I) go to the bank
오리해요 yorihaeyo (I) cook
TV보요 TVboayo (I) watch TV
잠자요 jamjayo (I) sleep

4E. CULTURE TOPIC 1

On first meeting someone in the United States, it is not likely you would ask a person’s age, his or her marital status, or the amount of someone’s household income. Some of these “taboo” questions, however, are quite commonly asked among Koreans. For example, asking about a person’s marital status is quite common in Korea, even on first meeting. Koreans also ask one’s age quite often from the beginning. It is not that they are trying to be rude; Koreans ask these questions to decide which form of speech to use. Whether to use a polite form or a non-polite form depends on your age; thus, the questions.
4F. GRAMMAR

Expressing "And": N하고 N; S고 S

-하고 is used in between two nouns to mean "and." While the English "and" is used in between the nouns or in between clauses in a sentence, the Korean -하고 is used only in between nouns. Between two clauses, use -고 instead. The first clause should drop the sentence ending before adding -고.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N하고 N</th>
<th>N-hago N</th>
<th>and (between nouns)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>S고 S</td>
<td>S-go S</td>
<td>and (between sentences)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Let's look at some examples of the use of -하고. The following examples show how -하고 is attached to the first noun.

학교 하고

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>학교 하고</th>
<th>hakgyohago</th>
<th>school and work</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>회사</td>
<td>hoesa</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

은지하고

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>은지 하고</th>
<th>Eunjihago</th>
<th>Eunji and Minho</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Minho</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

버스 하고

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>버스 하고</th>
<th>beoseuhago</th>
<th>bus and subway</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>지하철</td>
<td>jihacheol</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Postposition -도

A postposition is usually placed at the end of the noun form, ascribing a particular meaning to the attached noun. Sometimes it is attached to an adverb. We observed this kind of formation from the introduction of the grammatical particles in Lessons 1, 2, and 3. As we have already learned, grammatical particles indicate a particular relationship of the attached noun to other words in the sentence. Postpositions act similarly to these particles, except that the postpositions carry an extra meaning. Topic particles, subject particles, object particles, and location particles merely mark the function of the attached noun, whereas postpositions add meaning to the attached noun, and don't make any grammatical relations. There are other types of postpositions, but in this lesson, we will introduce a postposition -도 (-do), meaning "also" or "too."

Let's look at the following examples. Notice that the postposition -도 is not accompanied by any subject, topic, or object particles.

미드교 공부해어요. | Minhodo gongbuhaeoyo. | Minho also studies.
---|----------------|----------------|
대학원 생활도 해요. | Daehagwon saenghwaldo haeyo. | I also do (live) graduate school life.
영화도 재미있어요. | Yeonghwado jaemisseoyo. | A movie is fun too.
잘도 갈다. | Jaldo ganda. | It also goes well.

Telling Time

Remember the number counters from Lesson 3? Telling time uses the same Korean numbers you learned with counters, only now you'll need to use 시 (shi) as a noun counter for hours:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1 o'clock</th>
<th>2 o'clock</th>
<th>3 o'clock</th>
<th>4 o'clock</th>
<th>5 o'clock</th>
<th>6 o'clock</th>
<th>7 o'clock</th>
<th>8 o'clock</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>한 시</td>
<td>두 시</td>
<td>세 시</td>
<td>네 시</td>
<td>다섯 시</td>
<td>여섯 시</td>
<td>일곱 시</td>
<td>여덟 시</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>han shi</td>
<td>du shi</td>
<td>se shi</td>
<td>ne shi</td>
<td>daseot shi</td>
<td>yeoseot shi</td>
<td>ilgop shi</td>
<td>yeodeol shi</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
9 o'clock | 아홉 시 | ahop shi
10 o'clock | 열 시 | yesol shi
11 o'clock | 열 한 시 | yeol han shi
12 o'clock | 열 두 시 | yeol du shi

Notice here that you've also learned two more numbers: 열 한 (eleven) and 열 두 (twelve).

한 시예요. | Han siyeo. | It is one o'clock.
열두 시예요. | Yeoldu siyeo. | It is twelve o'clock.
일곱 시에 은지를 만나요. | Igop sie Eunjijeul mannayo. | I'm meeting Eunji seven o'clock.

Asking Time Questions

Answering time-related questions in Korean is actually fairly easy! Basically, to answer any type of questions, repeat the question sentence, omitting the question word (where, when, who, which, what, how). The position that used to be filled with the question word will now be occupied with the information that the questioner is looking for. There is no change in word order in Korean as there is in English "do" question formation (e.g., "Do you go to the gym?"). Let's see an example of a time question (when) and the answer to the question.

Q: 학교에 언제 가요? | Hankyeoe eonje gayo?
A: 학교에 3시에 가요. | Hankyeoe se sie gayo.

I go to school at three.

As you can see, the Korean word 언제 (when) is substituted with the new information: 3시에.

Days of the Week and Months of the Year

Let's now look at the Korean days of the week.

월요일 | Wolyoil | Monday
화요일 | Hwayoil | Tuesday
수요일 | Suyoil | Wednesday
목요일 | Mogyoil | Thursday
금요일 | Geumyoil | Friday
토요일 | Tooil | Saturday
일요일 | Ilyoil | Sunday

오늘은 목요일이에요. | Oneuleun mogyoileyo. | Today is Thursday.
내일은 금요일이에요. | Naeileun geunyoileyo. | Tomorrow is Friday.
어제는 수요일이었어요.* | Eojineun suyoileosseoyo. | Yesterday was Wednesday.

*You will learn this past tense ending in Lesson 7.

Months in Korean use the Sino-Korean counting system (introduced briefly in Lesson 3). Just place the number of the month (January = 1, February = 2, etc.) before 월 (wol).

1월 (일월) | ilwol | January
2월 (이월) | iwol | February
3월 (삼월) | samwol | March
4월 (사월) | sawol | April
5월 (오월) | owol | May
6월 (육월) | yuwol | June
7월 (칠월) | chilwol | July
8월 (팔월) | palwol | August
9월 (구월) | guwol | September
10월 (십월) | siwol | October
11월 (십일월) | sipilwol | November
12월 (십이월) | sipiwol | December

Lesson 4
Minho gets up at 6 in the morning. And he takes a shower and eats breakfast from 6 to 7. At 7, he rides the bus to go to Shinchon. From Shinchon, he rides the bus to go to graduate school. In graduate school, he studies from 9 to 12. The class ends at 2. From 2 he eats lunch with his friend.

NEW VOCABULARY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Peninsula</th>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>끝나요</td>
<td>kkeunnayo</td>
<td>finish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>친구</td>
<td>chingu</td>
<td>friend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>점심</td>
<td>jeomshim</td>
<td>lunch</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

46. CULTURE TOPIC 2

Koreans and other Asians, including Chinese, Taiwanese, and Japanese, are reported to sleep for substantially shorter periods than most people in other regions of the world. Common knowledge says that people should sleep an average of eight hours to live a healthy life. However, a 2005 study by Gallup Research, the average sleeping time of the world’s population was only 7.5 hours. In the meantime, 68% of Koreans do not go to bed until around midnight, while 65% of Koreans get up before 7 a.m. It’s possible that Koreans go to bed later because of the proliferation of 24-hour convenience stores, FC service rooms, many restaurants, and bars that have become prevalent in their city life. There is also the ever-present Internet use that has affected the life patterns of Koreans. Korean high school students sleep even less, averaging 6 hours due to their intensive schoolwork!

EXERCISES

A. Choose the best word from the list to complete the dialogue below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>주중에</th>
<th>공부하게요</th>
<th>휴가에요</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>연구실에서요</td>
<td>재미있겠네요</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A. 민호씨, 뭐 공부하게요?
B. 네, 1   2  
A. 아, 그래요? 어디에서 공부하게요?
B. 대학교  도서관과 2  2  
A. 주말에는 뭐 하세요?
B. 주말에는 일해요. 그래서 3  3  공부해야. 그런데 언제 휴가하실까요?
A.네, 5시에 4____ !
B. 퇴근하고 뭐 하세요?
A. 댄스 수업에 가요!
B.____5____!

B. Circle the appropriate particles or postpositions to fill in the missing part of the following sentences.
1. 지금 어디에서 어디(  ) 가요? (도/까지)
2. 아침 여덟 시 반까지 회사(  ) 가요. (해/도)
3. 회사(  ) 어디에 있어요? (는/은)
4. 대학원 생활(  ) 여러일요. (이/가)
5. 저(  ) 매일 학교에 가고 점심을 거기에서 먹어요. (도/부터)
6. 토요일(  ) 일요일에 꽃가게에 가요. (부터/하고)

C. Translate the following Korean sentences into English.
1. 몇 시부터 몇 시까지 일해요?
2. 목요일은 다섯 시에 퇴근이에요.
3. 주중에는 너무 바빠요.
4. 토요일에는 꽃가게에서 베타질 해요.
5. 월요일 밤에는 댄스 수업에 가요.

D. Translate the following English sentences into Korean.
1. By the way, the life of a graduate student (graduate life) is harder than I thought.
2. I also go to work every day.
3. I work from nine to five.
4. Where do you work?
5. When do you dance?
LESSON 5

학교에서
At School

In this lesson, we will learn how to talk about school subjects and other school-related topics including classes, buildings, and other school terms. We will also learn more time expressions. You will review non-polite expressions, and learn about pronouns and the expressions "to have" and "have to/must." A variety of daily life verbs will be introduced, so hang tight! Let's get started with a vocabulary warm-up!

5A. VOCABULARY WARM-UP

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>잠 지냈어요?</td>
<td>Jal jinaesae?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오래간만이다!</td>
<td>Oraegamanida!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>여기 인사해.</td>
<td>Yeogi insaehae.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>영어를 해세요?</td>
<td>Yeongeoleul haseyo?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>한국어도 알아요?</td>
<td>Hangugeodo alayo?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>전공이 뭐예요?</td>
<td>Jeonggongi mwoyeyo?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>잘 하시는데요. 속제가 너무 많이!</td>
<td>Jal hasineundeoyo. Sukje ga neomu mana!</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question (Korean)</th>
<th>Question (English)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>잠 지냈어요?</td>
<td>Have you been doing well?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오래간만이다!</td>
<td>Long time no see!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>여기 인사해.</td>
<td>Here, greet (meet) my friend.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>영어를 해세요?</td>
<td>Do you speak English?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>한국어도 알아요?</td>
<td>Do you know Korean too?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>전공이 뭐예요?</td>
<td>What is your major?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>잘 하시는데요. 속제가 너무 많이!</td>
<td>You're doing well. There is so much homework!</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5B. DIALOGUE

Minho comes to school on Wednesday and meets his friend Gina on campus.

민호: 야아, 지나! 안녕! 잘 지내?
Minho: Yaah, Gina! Annyeong! Jal jinae?
지나: 어, 민호! 오래간만이다! 그럼, 잘 지내.
"flower shop"은 "꽃가게." "꽃-가-게"!

Gina: Eo, Minho! Olaeganmanida! Geureom, jal jinae. How is your English?

민호: 어, 영어하네? 근데, 한국어도 잘 해?
Minho: Ah, Gina, "flower shop" 은 "kkotgabe." “Kkot-ga-ge”!

지나: 이, 지나, “flower shop” 은 "꽃가게." "꽃-가-게"!

Gina: Ah, "kkotgabe"!

민호: Hey, Gina! Hi! Are you doing well?

Gina: Oh, Minho! Long time no see! Of course I’m doing well. How is your English?

Minho: Ur, are you speaking English? Well, do you speak Korean well too?

Gina: No, not yet. I came from the U.S. So, I’m not that fluent. I arrived here in Korea last month.

Minho: Well, (I think) you speak well. What is your major?

Gina: (dazzled) What is "jeongong"?

민호: 전공은 "major"야.
Minho: Jeongongeon "major" ya.

지나: Ah, my "major"! 전공은 생물학.
Gina: Ah, my "major"! jeongongeon saengmulhak.

민호: 아, 그래? 어느 건물에서 공부해?
Minho: Ah, geurae? Eoneu geonnaeseo gongbhae?

지나: 나는 C26에서 공부해, 그런데 나는 전공이 뭐니?
Gina: Naneun C ishipyukdongseo gongbhae. Geuleonde neoneun jeongongi mwo?

민호: 공학, 숙제가 너무 많이! 주중에는 매일 공부해야 돼.
Minho: Gonghak. Sukjega neomu mana! Jujugeneun mail gongbhaeaya due.

지나: 그리고, 주말에는 아직도 그 flower shop에서 일해?
Gina: Geurigo, jumaleneun ajikdo geu flower shopeseo ilhae?
Comprehension Practice

Answer the questions based on the dialogue.

1. Where are Minho and Gina?
   a) 시청  
   b) 대학  
   c) 미국

2. Who is Minho meeting?
   a) 친구  
   b) 한국어  
   c) 온지

3. Why is Minho busy?
   a) 공부가 많아요  
   b) 전공이 생물학이에요  
   c) 꽃가게에서 일해요

4. What do you call a “major” in Korean? ________

5. “한국어” means ________

5C. VOCABULARY

잘 지내셨어요? Jal jinaesseo?
Have you been doing well?

오래만이다! Oraegomanida!
Long time no see!

잘 지내시네요. Jal jinaetji.
I have been doing well. (non-polite)

영어 Yeongeo
English

영어 하네요? (하나) Yeongeo hane?
Do you speak English?

한국어 Hangugeo
Korean

좋습니다 (하나) Jal haji
To do/speak well (non-polite)

미국 Miguk
U.S.

저야 (오나) Woasseo
came (non-polite)

그래서 Geuraesseo
Therefore, thus

지난 Jinan
Last, past

달 Dal
(Duration of) month

잘 하는데 몇? Jal haneunde mwo.
I think you do it well. (Conventional courteous expression between friends)

음 Eung
Yeah (non-polite)

숙제 Sukje
Homework

아직도 Ajikdo
Yet

일해? (일하다) Ilhae?
(Do you) work? (non-polite)

5D. KEY PHRASES

The following vocabulary includes some school subjects and other expressions you’ll frequently encounter in school.

영문학 Yeongmunhak
English literature

국문학 Gungmunhak
Korean literature

불문학 Bulmunhak
French literature

수학 Suhak
Mathematics

과학 Goahak
Science

화학 Hooahak
Chemistry

사회학 Sahoehak
Sociology

역사학 Yeoksaahak
History

고고학 Gogohak
Archaeology

컴퓨터 공학 Keompyuteo
Computer engineering

의학 Uihak
Medical studies
Non-polite expressions are used with a person who is
(1) close to you;
(2) younger than you;
(3) acquainted with you and identified as being of the same age.

One thing to note is that the term “non-polite expression” does not mean “rude expression.” In other words, a non-polite form is different from an impolite expression. The non-polite form is used when you feel very close to a person, to release a possible tension between two speakers and create friendliness. If someone is older than you, but an acquaintance, such as a big sister or a big brother, you can use a non-polite expression because you are family. Following the same logic, non-polite expressions can be occasionally used in work relationships after you have taken some time to get to know a colleague or business partner. Fundamentally, polite expressions mark a distant relationship and the non-intimate nature of their professionalism.

Polite and non-polite expressions are chiefly distinguished by their sentence ending. Attaching -요 to a verb would make a polite expressions.

You can see here how the polite ending is -어요/아요 attached at the end of the verbal expressions. But politeness is also marked by -요 in noun expressions:

Non-polite Question Ending -니

In the main text, you observed two new non-polite endings: -니 (ni) and -아 (ya). Let’s look at the question ending, -니 (ni), first. -니 (ni) is used
between friends when the speaker asks a question.

EXAMPLE OF NON-POLITE QUESTION ENDING –나

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>어디 가니?</th>
<th>Eodi gani?</th>
<th>Where are you going?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>점심 먹니?</td>
<td>Jeomshim meokni?</td>
<td>Are you eating lunch?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>집에서 오니?</td>
<td>Jibeseo oni?</td>
<td>Are you coming from home?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Non-polite Background Ending –아/어

-아 (ya) is used when the speaker has a comment, expresses an opinion, or is giving background information. -어 (ya) is only used after a vowel sound; if the sentence ends in a consonant, use -어야 (iya).

EXAMPLE OF NON-POLITE BACKGROUND ENDING –아

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>여기가 집이야.</th>
<th>Yeogiga jibiya.</th>
<th>Here is home.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>여기는 민호야.</td>
<td>Yeogineon Minhoya.</td>
<td>Here is Minho.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>저기는 시청역이야.</td>
<td>Jeogineun Sicheongyeogiya.</td>
<td>Over there is Sicheong (city hall) station.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Polite Question Ending –세요

There is a polite equivalent to –나 (ni). The ending –세요 (seyo) is used as a polite question ending, used for those who are older or superior to you.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>지금 가세요?</th>
<th>Jigeum gaseyo?</th>
<th>Are you going now?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>언제 가세요?</td>
<td>Eonje gaseyo?</td>
<td>When are you going?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>집에 가세요?</td>
<td>Jipe gaseyo?</td>
<td>Are you going home?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Pronouns

Korean pronouns also have polite and non-polite distinctions. In Korean, pronouns are often omitted, especially where they can be easily inferred.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1ST PERSON</th>
<th>POLITE</th>
<th>NON-POLITE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>저 (jeo*)</td>
<td>나 (na)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>저희(들) (jeohui (deul))</td>
<td>우리(들) (uri (deul))</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* With the subject particle 이/가, the form is modified to 저 (저가=저가).

The plural forms of we (우리들) and 저희 (저희들) are optional.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>3RD PERSON</th>
<th>POLITE</th>
<th>NON-POLITE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>he</td>
<td>그분 (gebun)</td>
<td>그, 그이 (geu(i))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she</td>
<td>그분 (gebun)</td>
<td>그 (너) (geu (nyeo))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>그분들 (gebundeul)</td>
<td>그들 (geudeul)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Korean language is insensitive to grammatical gender distinctions, so for “she,” Koreans use both 그 (geu) and 그녀 (geunyeo). (너 means “woman.”) We saw 그 (nyeo) in Lesson 2, where we learned it as the demonstrative meaning “that.” The pronoun 그 (nyeo) sounds the same, but here it means “he” or “she.”

The second person pronoun system in Korean is interesting. Both the pronouns 너 (neo) and 네희 (neohui) are straightforward for non-polite expressions. For polite expressions, the second person pronoun needs a bit more explanation. It is rude to call older people by their names directly in Korean culture, so Koreans try to avoid calling older people directly by name. Instead, either they call the person by his or her title, such as “Dr.” or “Prof.,” or 선생님 (“teacher”) as a general calling term. This title-calling practice is inherited from the Confucian culture brought from China, and still remains the standard in Korean society.
Expressing “Have To”

The expression “to have to” in Korean is formed using the pattern -어/어야 되요 (e/ay/aya duaeyo) added to the verb stem. The choice among these two forms is made depending on the preceding sound. If the preceding sound (e.g., verb root) ends with a dark vowel (우, 여, 오, 이, 외) in the last syllable, you need to use -어/어야 되요.

If the preceding sound (e.g., verb root) ends with a bright vowel (아, 오) in the last syllable, you need to use -아야 되어요. These rules of choosing a grammatical form depending on the quality of a preceding vowel are called “vowel harmony” in Korean.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2ND PERSON</th>
<th>POLITE</th>
<th>NON-POLITE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>you (sing.)</td>
<td>선생님 seonsaengnim</td>
<td>너 neo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>사모님 samonim</td>
<td>네 ne</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you (pl.)</td>
<td>여러분 yeoreobun</td>
<td>너희 neohui (deul)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

-야/어 있어요... Isseoya duaeyo... I have to have...
갈이야 되요. Gataya duaeyo. It has to be the same.
기야 되요. Gaya duaeyo. (I) have to go.
먹이야 되요. Meogeoya duaeyo. (I) have to eat.
일해아 되요.* Ilhaeya duaeyo. (I) have to work.

*하다 is irregular; it follows 해야 되요.

Many Korean words are clustered together to form patterns, so remembering these patterns is key to becoming fluent in Korean.

56. READING

The chart is a college major chart provided by Seoul National University. Which majors do you recognize? Circle the ones that are familiar.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>과</th>
<th>gua</th>
<th>정원</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>법학과</td>
<td>beophakgua</td>
<td>106명</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>영문과</td>
<td>yeoungmungua</td>
<td>25명</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>국문과</td>
<td>kukmungua</td>
<td>25명</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>수학과</td>
<td>suhakgua</td>
<td>30명</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>교육학과</td>
<td>gyooyuhakgua</td>
<td>66명</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>한문학과</td>
<td>hanmunhakgua</td>
<td>15명</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>컴퓨터공학과</td>
<td>keompyuteogonghakgua</td>
<td>100명</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기계공학과</td>
<td>gigyeonghakgua</td>
<td>55명</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>응용과</td>
<td>eumakgua</td>
<td>10명</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기악과</td>
<td>giakgua</td>
<td>15명</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>의학과</td>
<td>euihakgua</td>
<td>200명</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>생물학과</td>
<td>saengmulhakgua</td>
<td>40명</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>화학과</td>
<td>hoahakgua</td>
<td>25명</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>심리학과</td>
<td>shimrihakgua</td>
<td>25명</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Korean Educational System

The Korean school system does not provide kindergarten education for free, so parents have to pay for education until the child becomes six or seven years old. Some parents are enthusiastic about their children's early education, and are thus willing to pay expensive tuition to a Catholic kindergarten school or a school with a progressive education program. Most Korean children will go to elementary school by the age of seven. Elementary education lasts six years, after which children move on to middle school and high school. Middle school and high school in Korea are three years each, so a student is seventeen or eighteen when he or she graduates from high school. Many high school students these days want to go to college, so the competition for college matriculation is very high, especially for the good colleges that are guaranteed to educate a promising young work force. The most highly revered universities are Seoul National University, Yonsei University, Ewha Womans University, and Korea University, Seoul National University is famous for its top academic achievements, whereas Yonsei and Ewha were founded by missionaries from the U.S. and are continuously developing their foundations in international communication. Korea University was founded by a patriot in the late Chosun Dynasty (조선 왕조) who believed that patriot Koreans should take part in Korean education. These universities are the center of the development and modernity in Korea.

EXERCISES

A. Choose the best word from the list to complete the dialogue below.

그린데  저는  전공  많이  어때요

<p>| | | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. 실은 잘 재미있어요. 사람들이 아주 좋아요.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INDEPENDENT CHALLENGE

Let’s continue your journal with some newly learned expressions and words from this lesson. Review the lesson and previous lessons, and create possible questions that you can ask your friend. So far, we have learned how to ask “what,” “where,” and “when.” Create a pair of questions for each of these question words, and imagine how you might answer these questions if you are asked. Use as many school related terms as you can to review the content of this lesson. Make sure you use all of the Hangeul you have learned so far. Starting with the next lesson, you will no longer have the help of romanized transliterations, so it’s important to make sure you’ve had plenty of practice with the writing system.

LESSON

6

이메일 좀 보내 주세요!

Please Send Me an E-mail!

In this lesson, we’ll introduce some computer-related topics. You will learn computer and Internet terms, some conventional idioms, how to speak about events in the future, and how to make sentences negative. Let’s get started with a vocabulary warm-up!

6A. VOCABULARY WARM-UP

왜요?
It doesn’t work?
안 됐어요?
Please take a look at it.
 좀 빠 주세요.
It’s strange.
 이상해요.
It’s really a headache.
 정말 말썽이예요.
website update
 웹사이트 업데이트
Ah, I completely forgot!
 아, 감박했네요!
I am dating.
 데이터하고 있어요.

6B. DIALOGUE

Eunji and Gicheol are colleagues at a busy office in Seoul.

은지: 기철씨, 바빠요?

기철: 네, 좀, 왜요?

은지: 여기 이 프로그램 좀 빠 주시겠어요? 좀 이상해요.

기철: 또 안 돼요? 왜 그렇게.

은지: 제 좌석 프로세서가 정말 말썽이예요. 그리고 스프레드 쉐트도요.

기철: 한국 소프트, 이거 정말 안 되겠는데.
Comprehension Practice

Answer the questions based on the dialogue.

1. Who is Gicheol dating these days?
   a) 은지  b) 프로그래머  c) 민호

2. What is not working?
   a) 웹사이트  b) 워드 프로그램  c) 야후 코리아

3. What was sent to Gicheol last time?
   a) 액셀  b) 웹사이트  c) 넷 메일 파일

4. 파일 means______.

5. 꼴백쳤네요 means______.

6C. VOCABULARY

프로그램  program
Please take a look.
It's a bit strange.
a little/a bit
Is it not working?
I wonder why.
troublesome
Excel (computer program)
It can't be. (an expression said to yourself about something troublesome)
website
update
PDF file
sent (adj.)
document
I completely forgot!
again
I will take a look.
Argh! (an exclamation for when you confront something absurd or outrageous)
6D. KEY PHRASES

The following vocabulary features some common vocabulary related to computers and the Internet.

컴퓨터 고세요.
화면 보세요.
커서가 안 움직이세요.
컴퓨터가 고장났어요.
프린터가 안 됩니다.
워드 밖에 몰라요.
이메일 보내주세요.
노트북 있으세요?
서치 엔진 뭐 쓰세요?
구글 써요.
컴퓨터 잘 하세요?
저는 컴퓨터를 많이 몰라요.
웹사이트 만들었어요.
어제 접속했어요?

Turn off the computer, please.
Look at the screen, please.
My cursor is not moving.
My computer is out of order.
My printer is not working.
I only know Word.
Send me an e-mail, please.
Do you have a notebook?
Which search engine do you use?
I use Google.
Are you good with computers?
I don’t know a lot about computers.
I designed my website.
Did you connect to the Internet (chat room) yesterday?

6E. CULTURE TOPIC 1

To English speakers, Korean computer jargon can be easy and difficult at the same time. Most computer-related terms are English loan words throughout the world, but the pronunciation of the computer jargon in Korean is radically different. Among all Korean sounds, Korean does not have [f], [r], [z], and [θ]. So these sounds are substituted with other available sounds in the Korean phoneme system that have the closest pronunciation. For example, [f] is replaced by [p] (프렌드, “friend”), and [θ] is replaced by [l] or a sound between [l] and [r] (러닝, “running”). There are some sound combinations in English that are impossible in Korean. For example, there is no curly [ɾ] sound at the end of a Korean word. This means, you have to imagine the sound of “computer” without [ɾ] sound at the end. So, because of the sound coding discrepancies between the two languages, it is not always easy to distinguish all of the English loan words in Korean speech. However, as you hear more and more examples, you’ll get used to recognizing this sound translation system.

6F. GRAMMAR

Future Tense 1: First Person Intentional Future Tense
-어/을게요

In this lesson, we will learn two types of future tenses: the first person intentional future tense -어/을게요 and the conjecture 겨. These two future tenses are frequently used in Korean speech. Let’s take a look at the first person intentional future tense first.

The form -어/을게요 is used when expressing the speaker’s intended future action (I will...). In the main dialogue, you saw the word 볼게요. This is an example of how the future tense is formed in Korean, but this expression takes only the first person (I, we) as the subject of the sentence. The future marker -어/을게요 is attached in between the end of a verb and the sentence ending.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FUTURE TENSE FORMATION</th>
<th>EXAMPLES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Verb 가 (to go) + 었어요 (future tense) + 요 (sentence ending) = 었어요</td>
<td>제가 갈게요. I’ll go.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verb 잇 (to be there) + 었어요 (future tense) + 요 (sentence ending) = 었어요</td>
<td>제가 집에 있겠어요. I’ll be there at home.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

어 and 을 alternate in the future tense depending on whether the preceding sound is a consonant or a vowel. 을 follows consonants and reflects the insertion of a dummy vowel “요” combined with the future marker “어요.” Consonant clusters are usually avoided in Korean, and the Korean sound is usually chained into a consonant-vowel-consonant-vowel (C.V.C.V) pattern.
Future Tense 2: Conjecture -겠

We just learned one way to form the future tense, -ㄹ/을 게요, which expresses one’s own intentional action in the future. The second way to form a future tense is using -겠. -겠 is placed after a verb stem and before a sentence ending, marking a conjectural event. This form tends to be used in a situation where it is rather formal. Look at the following chart to compare the two forms of the future tense:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FIRST PERSON INTENTIONAL ACTION FUTURE TENSE</th>
<th>CONJECTURE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ㄹ/을 게요</td>
<td>-겠어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1a) 저는 일 할게요.</td>
<td>1b) 저는 일하겠습니다.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I’ll work. (informal)</td>
<td>I will work. (formal)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2a) 제가 집에 있을게요.</td>
<td>2b) 제가 집에 있을겠습니다.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I’ll be there at home.</td>
<td>I will be there at home. (formal)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The distinction between these two forms does not differ greatly except the first person future tense -ㄹ/을 게요 is used only with the first person subject. The conjecture future can also be used with other persons.

It would be strange to you, Minho.

Negations

There are two ways to form negation in Korean. One is called short negation and the other is called long negation. The short negation is fairly easy: Place the negative element 안 (not) in front of the verb.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SHORT NEGATION</th>
<th>EXAMPLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>안 + verb + ending</td>
<td>안 가요 (I don’t go)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

It is also important to note that in many cases, the subject particle -이/가 tends to change to -은/는 when a sentence becomes negative.

Possessive Pronouns

Let’s take a look at how to form possessive expressions in Korean. You came across possessive pronouns briefly in this and the previous lesson. To form the possessive in Korean, add the particle -의 to the end of the noun or pronoun. -의 is comparable to the English preposition “of.” Here is a chart of the possessive pronouns:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>POLITE</th>
<th>NON-POLITE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>my</td>
<td>저의/제</td>
<td>나의/내</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>our</td>
<td>저희(들)의</td>
<td>우리(들)의</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>his</td>
<td>그분의</td>
<td>그의</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>her</td>
<td>그분의</td>
<td>그녀의</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>their</td>
<td>그분들의</td>
<td>그들의</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>your (sing.)</td>
<td>선생님의/Name +씨의</td>
<td>너의/네</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>your (pl.)</td>
<td>여러분의</td>
<td>너희(들)의</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minji’s</td>
<td>민지씨의</td>
<td>민지의</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Notice the contracted forms in first person singular, both polite and non-polite: 제 (저의) and 내 (나의). In the second person, the contracted form is only used in the non-polite: 네 (너의).

These possessive pronouns will always come before the noun being possessed.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>맹호씨의 컴퓨터</th>
<th>Minho's computer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>내 이메일</td>
<td>my e-mail</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>그(녀)의 웹사이트</td>
<td>her website</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>그(분)들의 파일</td>
<td>their file</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6G. READING

Find and circle some English loan words in the following text about computers.

아후 코리아는 한국어 서비스가 가능한 웹 서치 엔진입니다. 이 서비스를 사용하면 다른 유용한 서치 엔진들과 마찬가지로 쉽게 원하시는 정보를 찾을 수 있습니다. 서치 엔진의 인터넷 상에 존재하는 여러 웹사이트들을 편리하게 찾는 서비스로서, 전 세계적으로 많은 업체들이 이런 서비스를 무료로 제공하고 있습니다. 대표적인 서비스 업체로서, 구글, 라이코스, 야후, 다음 등이 있습니다.

Yahoo Korea is a web search engine that is written in the Korean language. If you use this service, you will be able to find information you wanted easily, as well as with other commonly used search engines. A search engine is a convenient service that finds various kinds of websites that exist on the Internet. Throughout the world, many companies provide this service for free. Representative search engines these days are Google, Lycos, Yahoo, and Daum.

NEW VOCABULARY

가능한 possible
서치 search
엔진 engine
-연 if . . .
마찬가지로 as well as
원하시는 wanted
정보 information
-란 it means, it is

6H. CULTURE TOPIC 2

IT Industry Trend in Korea

There are several regions in Korea known for technological innovations in computers. One such area is Teheran Ro (테헤란로), a southeastern region of Seoul where newly built thirty- to forty-story high-rise buildings are busy twenty-four hours a day in the hustle and bustle of the computer business. From the 1990s through the present day, Teheran Ro has often been referred to as Korea’s Silicon Valley. Teheran Ro is also famous as one of the newly established main financial districts in Seoul, so the streets are often crowded with many investors and venture capitalists. It is as if Wall Street and Silicon Valley were to spring up together in one place in a metropolitan city. Another similarly technologically enriched area is Daejeon (대전), located two hours outside of Seoul. Daejeon is famous for its research complexes, including major governmental projects. In previous decades, the city was famous for its hot spas and had the traditional look of mid-region Korea. Now Daejeon has been completely transformed in the process of becoming a new center of technological development. Many researchers moved to Daejeon at the same time in the 1990s, and so now one can find an entire district filled with M.A.s and Ph.D.s who are dedicating their lives to serious technological research in computers, genetics, and robotics.

For more information on Teheran Ro and Daejeon:
http://www.j-mong.pe.kr/seoul/p-04-09.html
http://www.daejeon.go.kr/english/index.jsp
EXERCISES

A. Choose the best word from the list to complete the dialogue below.

| 빌리 업데이트 안 된 휴대폰 좀 알아요 |

A. 여기 이 프로그램_____ 1 _____ 따라 주세요.
B. 왜요?
A. 좀 이상해요.
B. 또______ 2 ______ 이에요? 지난 번에 고쳤는데…
A. 네, 역서가 잘못____ 3 ______.
B. 그런데 지난 번 웹 사이트_____ 4 _____ 는 어떻게?
A. 네? 아니, 아직 안 왔어요.
B. _____ 5 _____ 하세요! 우리는 너무 바빠요!

B. Complete the sentences with the possessives in parentheses.
1. 은지씨, 여기________ 컴퓨터 좀봐 주세요! (my)
2. 아아, 기철야, __________회사가 바쁘다면! (your)
3. __________친구는 바빠요? (은지씨)
4. __________웹사이트가 생각보다 어려워요. (their)
5. 민호씨는 __________배달을 잘 해요? (flower shop's)

C. Negate the following sentences using the short negation form.
1. 컴퓨터가 어려워요.
2. 다 왔어요?
3. 사실은 지난 주부터 데이트하고 있어요.
4. 바빠요?
5. 지난 번에 고쳤어요.

D. Negate the following sentences using the long negation form.
1. 지금은 삼물학을 전공해야.
2. 저는 미국에서 왔어요.
3. 숙제가 많아요.
4. 우리는 공부하지 않아요.
5. 꽃가게에서 일해야.
INDEPENDENT CHALLENGE

For this independent challenge, practice using possessive pronouns. Use the vocabulary you’ve learned so far, the glossary, or the web dictionary at http://dict.impact.pk/k to make lists of items using possessives. If you want to use words for items around your house or family members, you can look at the Key Phrases sections of Lessons 11 and 12, or look up the words in the glossary. Lastly, outline the computer terms that you learned in this lesson. Form possessives for each term and think about how English phonemes are translated into Korean phonemes in these words.

LESSON

7

신입 사원

A New Employee

In this lesson, you will learn expressions that are used in office settings in Korea. We will introduce vocabulary for dates and times, as well as some vocabulary for describing people. You will also learn indirect object formation and ways to express the past tense in Korean.

7A. VOCABULARY WARM-UP

크리스 씨세요? Are you Mr. Chris?
가 식일하게 될 heard
들었어요 Follow me, please.
저를 따라 오세요. Do you speak Korean?
한국어 하세요? (I) learned
배웠어요 office
사무실 left
왼쪽
많이 배우겠습니 I will learn a lot.

7B. DIALOGUE

Chris is from California and will be starting work at a Korean venture company today. Chris is introduced to Eunji, who works for the company as a graphic designer.

크리스: 안녕하세요?

온지: 오, 안녕하세요? 신입사원 크리스씨?

크리스: 네, 반갑습니다. 저도 온지씨와 같이 일하게 될 거라는 말씀을 들었어요.

온지: 네, 그럼 이제부터 저를 따라 오세요. 한국어 하세요?
Eunji: No, to the right. And there in front is Ji-Young, who works with us. Chris, by the way, is this your first day?

Chris: Yes. I will learn a lot (from this work).

Comprehension Practice

Answer the questions based on the dialogue.

1. Where is Chris from?
   a) 한국   b) 미국   c) 캐나다

2. How many people are in Eunji’s team?
   a) 네 명    b) 다섯 명    c) 여섯 명

3. Where is Chris going to work?
   a) 팀장 앞    b) 지영 앞    c) 은지 앞

4. “배웠어요” means ________.

5. What do you say when you see a new person entering the office?

7C. VOCABULARY

신입사원: new recruit
일하다: to work
같이: together
되다: to become
일하게 될 (일하다, 되다): will work with us
부장님: department head/section chief
말씀: saying/words (hon.)
들었어요 (듣다): heard (to hear)
-한테: to (someone)
-한테서: from (someone)
따라오세요 (따라오다): to follow
육 개월 동안: for six months
배웠어요 (배우다): learned (to learn)
사무실: office
팩스: fax
열: next
책상: desk
7E. CULTURE TOPIC 1

Koreans love to comment on their coworkers’ appearance! They are curious about a coworker’s life, and notice small changes in appearance. This can make a foreigner happy at times, surprised at times, and perhaps even a bit uncomfortable at first. Commenting on coworkers’ appearances is probably a more common practice in less professional vocations. Even for Koreans in the professional world, it would be uncomfortable to comment on someone’s appearance before getting down to the actual business at hand. Koreans also may ask you whether you are married or not in the first meeting. They may also ask for personal details such as age, where you and your parents were born, what kind of educational degree you have attained, and so on. Be prepared for these intimidating questions, but remember that after dealing with such personal questions, you will likely become friends quite quickly.

7F. GRAMMAR

Past Tense

Simple past tense is expressed with two forms, -었/-았-, or one contraction, -었-, attached to the verb root. The choice among these forms is made depending on the preceding sound. If the preceding sound (e.g., verb root) ends with a dark vowel (우, 어, 응, 이, 외) or any other vowel that is neither singles nor 장 in the last syllable, you need to choose -었-.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VERB ROOT ENDING WITH DARK VOWELS</th>
<th>PAST TENSE WITH -었-</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>주다 (to give)</td>
<td>주었</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>되다 (to become)</td>
<td>되었</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>어울리다 (to fit)</td>
<td>어울렸 = contraction of 리 + 었</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>들다 (to listen)</td>
<td>들었 = 들 (when modifying) + 었</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>배우다 (to learn)</td>
<td>배웠 = 배우 + 었 (vowels 우 and 어 are contracted to 위)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>일하다 (to work)</td>
<td>일했</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>공부하다 (to study)</td>
<td>공부했</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이상하다 (to be strange)</td>
<td>이상했</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Minji gave me a book.
It became a clothing store.
That thing fit you well.
I heard a lot about you. (lit., I heard words about you a lot.)
I learned a lot of Korean.
We worked together at the company.

If the preceding sound (e.g., verb root) ends with a bright vowel (아, 오) in the last syllable, you need to choose -았-.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VERB ROOT ENDING WITH BRIGHT VOWELS</th>
<th>PAST TENSE WITH -았-</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>같다 (to be the same)</td>
<td>갈았</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>좋다 (to be good)</td>
<td>좋았</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Here are more examples of the past tense with bright vowels:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>키가 같았어요.</td>
<td>(They/We are) the same height.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>보기엔 좋았어요.</td>
<td>It was good to see.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

-兮- is a contracted form for verb roots ending in ㅏ or ㅗ.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VERB ROOT</th>
<th>PAST TENSE CONTRACTION -兮-</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>가다</td>
<td>갓 + 앛 = 갓 (ㅏ + ㅏ = one ㅏ)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>타다</td>
<td>탑 + 앛 = 탑 (ㅏ + ㅏ = ㅏ)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>크다</td>
<td>크+ 앛 = 크 (ㅗ is dropped when modifying)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Indirect Objects

Indirect object particles are used to mean “to (someone).” There are three kinds of indirect object particles in Korean.

-에게 to someone (literate form)
-한테 to someone (spoken form)
-께 to someone (polite form)

-에게 appears in letters or books more than as a spoken form, whereas -한테 is mostly used in speech. -께 is an honorific expression. Take a look at the following examples.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>은지는 민호에게 책을 주었다.</td>
<td>Eunji gave a book to Minho.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>민호는 은지에게 일을 주었다.</td>
<td>Minho gave some work to Eunji.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>크리스한테 안내해 주세요.</td>
<td>Give a tour to Chris.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>친구한테 편지를 쓰겠어요.</td>
<td>I will write a letter to my friend.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>그 분께 인사 드리세요.</td>
<td>Give a greeting to that person (hon.).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사장님께 그 소식을 들LERİ어요.</td>
<td>I heard the news from the CEO.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notice that -께 is usually used with people who are older, a boss, parents, or other older relatives.

Making Requests: -어 주세요/-아 주세요

In Korean, when you want to politely ask someone to do something, the request sometimes appears as an ending, and other times as a grammatical form. This form -어 주세요/-아 주세요 is used to make requests. Remember the distinction of dark and bright vowel classes and the
“vowel harmony” phenomenon in Korean? The -어/여 part will alternate depending on the vowel from the preceding syllable. If the preceding syllable contains the vowel 어, -어 is used. If the preceding syllable contains the vowel 여, -여 is used.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>-어 주세요</th>
<th>-여 주세요</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>가 + -어 주세요</td>
<td>가 + -여 주세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가주세요.</td>
<td>빨아 + -어 주세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Please go.</td>
<td>빨아어 주세요.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Please eat.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Let’s see how this works with some other Korean verbs you’re familiar with:

| 사 주세요. (사 + 어) | Please buy. |
| 와 주세요. (와 + 어) | Please come. |
| 들어 주세요. (들 + 어) | Please listen. |
| 배워 주세요. (배우 + 어) | Please learn. |

**Modification of the Verb Root 하다 (To Do)**

The verb -하다 is very productively used verb, but it is irregular. Let’s review how -하다 verbs are modified in other tenses.

| Polite-friendly ending | 하 + 아요 = 해요 |
| Polite formal ending | 하 + 예나다 = 합니다 |
| Request form | 하 + 이 주세요 = 해 주세요 |
| Past tense with polite friendly ending | 하 + 았어요 = 했어요 |
| First person future tense | 하 + 음계요 = 할게요 |
| Conjectural future | 하 + 갈어요 = 할겠어요 |

The verb 하다 is productively combined with other nouns to turn a noun into a verb. Let’s take a look at more examples of the 하다 class of verbs using the request form -해 주세요.

**Dependent Noun -분**

The expression -분 is frequently used in business settings that requires a modifier (acting as an adjective) to complete the meaning. The modifier is formed using the following formula:

adjective + -L/ -은 + 분

Use -L after vowels, and -은 after consonants.

| 작은 분 | small person (hon.) |
| 잘 생긴 분 | good-looking person (hon.) |
| 파마한 분 | the person with permed hair (hon.) |

**7G. READING**

The following shows part of a work order from the boss. First, circle the words that you recognize. Many words in this text are loan words from English. Second, underline the sentences that you can translate and translate those sentences into English. Find the indirect object particles and request forms that you’ve just learned.

날짜: 12월 10일 금요일
이름: 크리스 척슨
이메일: chrisj@korean.net
전화: 1-82-02-2355-3906
제목: 전진 코리아 센터 웹 업데이트
내용: 크리스 척슨씨, 월요일 오후까지 업데이트 된 웹사이트를 인터넷 상에 올려주시기 바랍니다. 그리고 민지씨에게 그 파일을 주세요. 내일은 프로그램 A를 다운로드 해 주세요. 감사합니다.
EXERCISES

A. Choose the best word from the list to complete the dialogue below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>부탁해요</th>
<th>같이</th>
<th>일해야요</th>
<th>바꿔요</th>
<th>안녕하세요</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. 크리스씨, 지금 뭐 하세요?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. 는 걸 돕자요.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. 2 일하게 될 온지씨요.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. 저는 크리스 씨안한이네요.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. 김은지씨요</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. 는 온지씨는, 서울에서 왔어요.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. 정도 한국에서 자녀 5 . 그래서 한국말을 잘</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. 하세요</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. 주세요, or -아 주세요 , to express &quot;please&quot; with the given verbs, as in the example.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. 가세요 → 가세요</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. 따라 오세요 → 따라 오세요</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. 배우세요 → 배우세요</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. 오세요 → 오세요</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. 일하세요 → 일하세요</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

B. Fill in the blanks with an appropriate particle.

1. 오늘 ___________ 같이 일하게 될 크리스예요.
2. 크리스 ___________ 회사 좀 보여 주세요.
3. 제가 ___________ 어디예요?
4. 몇 명 ___________ 같이 일해야요?
5. LA 에서 육개월 동안 한국어 ___________ 배웠어요.
D. Translate the following English sentences into Korean.
1. I'm a little busy today.
2. I heard the words yesterday (hon.).
3. Please show (him) around the company.
4. I learned Korean for six months in L.A.
5. Chris, your desk is on my left side.

**ANSWER KEY**

**Comprehension Practice**

1. b) 미국 2. b) 다섯 명 3. c) 은지 옆

**Exercises**

A. 1. 바뻐요 2. 같이 3. 안녕하세요 4. 부탁해요 5. 일했어요
B. 1. 가 주세요 2. 따라 와 주세요 3. 배워 주세요 4. 와 주세요
5. 일해 주세요
C. 1. 부터 2. 에게 3. 은 4. 이 5. 를
D. 1. 저는 오늘 좀 바뻐요. 2. 어제 말씀 들었어요.
3. 회사 좀 보여 주세요. 4. LA에서 한국어를 6개월 동안 배웠어요.
5. 크리스씨의 책상은 제 원쪽이에요.

**INDEPENDENT CHALLENGE**

Let's use the content of this lesson to do some writing in your Korean journal on the topic of office relationships and tasks. First, find some distinctive tasks you do at your work (if you don't currently work, just use your imagination for tasks you might be asked to perform on a job). Try to translate your tasks with the action verbs you've learned, and use these verbs to ask someone to perform the task for you. Then, make a list of things you'd like to do at work the next day, and try to write them in Korean. For example, you may write something like, "Ask Chris to send a fax to the head of the department," or, "I will teach Korean to Mary." Try to make your English sentences as simple and direct as possible so that you can write them in Korean easily. Use the indirect object -한테/에게/-게 forms in your sentences. You can also try to describe your coworkers, fellow students, or family members using the descriptive phrases you learned in this lesson.
In this lesson, you will learn how to make phone calls and reservations in Korean. You'll learn various expressions related to phone conversations—in particular, the numbering systems used in Korean for counting and giving phone numbers. Let's get started with a vocabulary warm-up first.

8A. VOCABULARY WARM-UP

여보세요?
Hello?

良い에 싶었어요...
I'd like to see...

어디가 아프세요?
Where are you sick? (What?)

배가 아프요.
I am sick to my stomach.

께서한 것 같아요.
I seem to have a stomachache.

진료
diagnosis

예약하시겠어요?
Would you like an appointment?

의료 보험증
medical care card

성함과 전화번호
name and phone number

8B. DIALOGUE

Eunji is not feeling well today. She has had a headache since this morning, and now it is getting worse. She has even developed a stomachache as well, so she decides to call the doctor's office.

온지: 여보세요?

간호사: 네, 음지병원입니다.

온지: 의사 선생님을 좀 만나고 싶은데요.

간호사: 어디가 아프세요?

온지: 아침부터 머리가 아프더니 지금은 갑자기
배가 아파요.
간호사: 염도 나세요?
은지: 염은 많이 안 나요. 제한 것 같아요. 예약이 언제 되지요?
간호사: 오류 마지막 진료만 남았어요. 4시 40분입니다. 예약하시겠어요?
은지: 네, 감사합니다. 4시 40분에 가겠습니다.
간호사: 의료 보험증 있으세요?
은지: 네, 있어요.
간호사: 성함과 전화번호 좀 부탁합니다.
은지: 제 이름은 이은지이고 전화번호는 355의 7490입니다.
간호사: 네, 전화 예약되었습니다.

Eunji: Hello?
Nurse: Yes, this is Eul Ji hospital.
Eunji: I'd like to see a doctor, please.
Nurse: Where are you sick?
Eunji: I've had a headache since this morning, and now I suddenly started having a stomachache.
Nurse: Do you have a fever?
Eunji: I don't have that much of one. I seem to have an upset stomach. When is it possible to make an appointment?
Nurse: There is only one last time remaining this afternoon. It is at 4:40. Would you like to make an appointment?
Eunji: Yes, thank you. I will go at 4:40.
Nurse: Do you have a medical insurance card?
Eunji: Yes, I do.
Nurse: Your name and phone number, please?
Eunji: My name is Yi Eunji, and the phone number is 355-7490.
Nurse: Yes, your doctor's reservation is set.

Comprehension Practice
Answer the following questions based on the dialogue.
1. Since when has Eunji felt sick?
   a) 어제  
   b) 오늘 아침  
   c) 오늘 오후
2. What symptoms does Eunji not have?
   a) 머리가 아파요  
   b) 눈이 아파요  
   c) 열이 많이 나요
3. What did the nurse ask Eunji to bring?
   a) 주민 등록증  
   b) 의료 보험증  
   c) 운전 면허증
4. "Diagnosis" in Korean is ____________.
5. "염도 나세요?" is asking ____________.

8C. VOCABULARY

여보세요?
병원
의사 선생님
병고 싶은데요... (병다)
아프세요? (아프다)
머리
- 더니
감자기
배
열
나세요 (나다)
체한 것 같아요.
예약
 언제 되지요? (되다)
마지막
진료
가능하다
의료 보험증
가지고 가다

Hello? (opening remark for phone call)
hospital
Doctor (선생님 = honorific title, literal meaning is “teacher”)
I'd like to see/meet...
(Are you) sick?
head
used to (situation in the past)
suddenly
stomach
fever
to appear
I seem to have a stomachache.
reservation
When is it possible?
last
diagnosis
to be possible
medical insurance card
to take and bring
8E. CULTURE TOPIC

Telephones

The Korean national area code is 82. So when you make an international phone call to Korea, you will first dial 82 and then the area code, followed by the phone number. Seoul’s area code is 02, and as the number of land lines and mobile phone services grew exponentially, Seoul began using the four-digit phone number system a few years ago to accommodate the growing number of phone numbers in the city. The use of cell phones became standard in Korean culture beginning in the late 1990s. The public use of cell phones is common. It is not considered very courteous to make loud phone calls in public, but many people are constantly on their cell phones, so you will observe this behavior quite often, even on the subway or bus.

8F. GRAMMAR

Counting Numbers Beyond 10

There are two ways to count numbers in Korean. One is often called a Sino-Korean numbering system, and the other one is called a Korean-Korean numbering system. “Sino-” indicates an aspect of the Korean language inherited from Chinese language.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINO-KOREAN NUMBERS</th>
<th>KOREAN NUMBERS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>00</td>
<td>공</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>일</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>심일</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>이</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>심이</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>삼</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>심삼</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>사</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>심사</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>오</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>이십</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>육</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>삼십</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>칠</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>사십</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>팔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>오십</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>구</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>백</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>십</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Sino-Korean system is generally used to refer to higher numbers, as when counting money, or giving the minutes when telling time. Phone numbers are also said in Sino-Korean numbers. Look at the following example:
Korean-Korean counting system will change slightly. Here are some examples of this change with the object counter -개:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NUMBER</th>
<th>CHANGE IN SOUND</th>
<th>EXPRESSIONS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>hana → 한</td>
<td>한 개 (one thing)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>둘 → 두</td>
<td>두 개 (two things)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>셋 → 세</td>
<td>세 개 (three things)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>넷 → 네</td>
<td>네 개 (four things)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>소무 → 소무</td>
<td>소무 개 (twenty things)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

I Like To . . . -고 싶은 데요

-고 싶은 데요 is actually two grammar patterns joined together. The first part, "verb + 고 싶어요," expresses one's wishes and desires, and the second part, -은 데요, gives background information contradicting the impressions or expectations of the listener. All together, "verb + 고 싶은 데요" generally means "I like to + verb" and is a very common expression in actual use. It is also a mild and polite way to express one's wishes when they are in contradiction to the wishes of others.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VERB</th>
<th>-고 싶어요</th>
<th>-은 데요</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Main verbal expression</td>
<td>Wishes, desires: grammar pattern (before ending)</td>
<td>Background information, contrasting to the hearer's expectation (ending)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The verb before -고 싶어요 should be a verb base form, which means a non-tensed verb infinitive. Let's see some examples of this pattern with a few verbs you already know.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VERB</th>
<th>고 싶은 데요</th>
<th>I'd like to</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>저는 영화관에 가고 싶은 데요.</td>
<td>I'd like to go to the movies. (unlike what you think)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>지금 점심이 먹고 싶은 데요.</td>
<td>I'd like to eat lunch right now. (unlike what you think)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>내일은 한국어를 공부하고 싶은 데요.</td>
<td>I'd like to study Korean tomorrow. (unlike what you think)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
8G. READING

The following chart shows a part of the 병원's appointment schedule tomorrow. Read the patient's name and all the phone numbers out loud; try to rewrite the phone numbers in Korean pronunciation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>환자 이름</th>
<th>시간</th>
<th>전화번호</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>김 명희</td>
<td>9:45 a.m.-10:30 a.m.</td>
<td>664-7823</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>조 세철</td>
<td>10:30 a.m.-11:15 a.m.</td>
<td>374-9801</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이 광수</td>
<td>11:15 a.m.-12 p.m.</td>
<td>284-6580</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following text is from Minho's voice mail message. Identify some of the expressions and words that you know.

안녕하세요? 박민호입니다. 저는 지금 전화를 받을수가 없습니다. 빠 소리가 나면 음성 사서함에 올길을 넘겨주세요. 감사합니다. 좋은 하루 되세요!

Hello, I am Park Minho. I cannot get to the phone (take the phone) right now; please leave your message on the voice mail after you hear the beep. Thank you. Have a nice day!

NEW VOCABULARY

빠 소리  
소리  
음간  
좋은 하루 되세요!  
Have a nice day! (idiom)

8H. CULTURE TOPIC 2

Mobile Technologies in Korea

Korea has become known for the recent development of its technology industry since the 1990s. World-renowned Korean companies such as Samsung and LG created many popular cell phones and are among the leaders of mobile device technologies. In Korean, "Samsung" means "three stars," and "LG" is a combination of two names, "Lucky" and "GoldStar." "Lucky" and "GoldStar" are the names of two companies that merged in 1995. Not only are these brands famous for cell phones, but they have also become noted for their achievements in flat panel LCD screen technology. Samsung and LG have been deeply involved in this "technology war" against each other, and their rivalry has become a motivation for innovation. These two companies are gaining a great amount of respect both domestically and abroad for technological and industrial achievements in the flat screen and mobile markets, and are quickly becoming known as industry leaders. The success of these companies is creating a positive influence on Korea's worldwide image.

EXERCISES

A. Choose the best word from the list to complete the dialogue below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>볼고 싶은데요</th>
<th>아프세요</th>
<th>예약</th>
<th>여보세요</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>가지고</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A. _____ 1 _____?

B. 네, 병원입니다. 어디가 _____ 2 _____?

A. 배가 너무 아파요. 의사 선생님을 _____ 3 _____.

B. _____ 4 _____ 하고 싶으세요?

A. 네. 몇 시에 갈까요?

B. 오늘 오후 세 시 반에 오세요. 그리고 의료 보험증 _____ 5 _____ 오세요.

A. 감사합니다.

B. Give the most logical answers to the questions in Korean.

1. 어디 가세요? → ________.
2. 어디가 아프세요? → ________.
3. 몇 시에 갈까요? → ________.
4. 열도 나세요? → ________.
5. 예약하시겠어요? → ________.

C. How are these numbers read in Korean? Write them in either Sino-Korean or Korean-Korean numbers according to their proper usage.

1. 100 → ________.
2. 02-353-7191 → ________.
3. 1-617-220-3778 → ________.
D. Translate the following English expressions into Korean.

1. Suddenly I have a stomachache.
2. I'd like to make a reservation, please.
3. I've had a headache since this morning.
4. Do you have a fever also?
5. I'll go there at 4:10.

**ANSWER KEY**

**Comprehension Practice**

1. b) 오늘 아침 2. b) 눈이 아파요 3. b) 의료 보험증
4. “Diagnosis” in Korean is “진찰.”
5. “열도 나세요?” is asking “do you have a fever?”

**Exercises**

A. 1. 여보세요 2. 아프세요 3. 빨고 싶은데요 4. 예약 5. 가지고
B. (suggested answers) 1. 병원에 가요. 2. 머리가 아파요. 3. 세 시에 오세요. 4. 네. 많이 나요. 5. 네. 다섯 시에 예약하고 싶은데요.
C. 1. 밥 2. 공원에 산책할 3. 일에 육일칠에 이야기에 삼칠칠팔 4. 세 개 5. 네 명
D. 1. 감자기 배가 아파요. 2. 예약하고 싶은데요. 3. 아침부터 머리가 아파요. 4. 열도 나세요? 5. 4시 40분에 가겠습니다.
In this lesson, you will be introduced to a situation involving a conversation between a doctor and a patient at the doctor’s office. Polite command expressions and expressions using “every” will be introduced, along with the descriptions of various illnesses and symptoms. Let's get started first with a vocabulary warm-up!

**9A. VOCABULARY WARM-UP**

여서 오세요!  
Come on in! (Welcome!)

성함이 ... 세요?  
Is your name (fml. honorific) ... ?

어떻게 오셨어요?  
What brought you here?  
(honorific past)

어랫배가 살살 아파요.  
My lower stomach is slowly getting upset.

여섯 시간마다 한번씩 드세요.  
Take (this) every six hours.

물만 마시세요.  
Drink only water.

식중독  
food poisoning

절대 안정하세요.  
You must rest.

**9B. DIALOGUE**

Eunji arrives at Eul Ji general hospital in the afternoon. She has checked in and is now waiting to see the doctor.

의사: 안녕하세요? 성함이 이은지 씨세요?  

의자: 네, 이 은지예요. 4시 40분 예약인데요.  

의사: 여서 오세요. 어떻게 오셨어요?  

의자: 네, 오늘 아침부터 머리가 너무 아프더니 오후에는 배가 아프기 시작했어요.  

의사: 배는 어떻게 아프기 시작했어요?
Comprehension Practice

Answer the following questions based on the dialogue.

1. What did the doctor say Eunji needs to do to treat her symptoms?
   a) 병원에서 메시예요  
   b) 이메일로 드세요  
   c) 6시에 드세요

2. When did Eunji eat sashimi?
   a) 이메일로  
   b) 이메일로  
   c) 오전 아침

3. How often does Eunji have to take her medicine?
   a) every four hours  
   b) every six hours  
   c) every eight hours

4. What did the doctor say Eunji has?
   
5. “물만 마시세요” means __________.

9C. VOCABULARY

어서 오세요!  
성함
어떻게 오셨어요?
예약
- 다른
시작했어요
어 dealloc
설상
아프다
전체
드셨습니까?
회
식중독
약
- 마다
- 빈씩
물
마시다
아무

Come on in! (welcoming remark)
name (formal term at the business site)
What brought you here? (fml./polite expression)
reservation
used to (past terminated action)
started
lower stomach
slowly, gradually, slightly
to be sick
whole
Did you eat? (hon.)
sashimi
food poisoning
medicine
every-
each (used with a number)
water
to drink
any (used in negative expression)
9D. KEY PHRASES

Here are some expressions used to describe symptoms.

두통이 심해요. I have a severe headache.
발목을 빠쳤어요. I sprained my ankle.
눈병이 났어요. I caught an eye infection.
열이 많이 난요. I have a high fever.
감기에 걸렸어요. I caught a cold.
독감이 같아요. I seem to have the flu.
배가 아파요. I have a stomachache.
설사가 나요. I have diarrhea.
가래가 많이 나와요. I have phlegm.
정신이 없어요. I am mindless.
토할 것 같아요. I am about to vomit.
땀이 많이 나요. I sweat too much.
머리가 어지러워요. I have dizziness.
허리가 아파요. I have back pain.
기침이 나요. I have a cough.

9E. CULTURE TOPIC 1

When someone in an official position asks for some personal information about you, she or he will say “...이 어떻게 되십니까?” The ending “-니까?” is a formal way of asking questions. The expression “...이 어떻게 되십니까?” literally means “how did it become ...?”. But the conventional use of it is “what is ...?”. So “성함이 어떻게 되십니까?” is asking “How did it become your name?” in direct translation, but it means “What is your name?” Korean expressions commonly use these indirect means of asking questions, as you can see in the above examples.

9F. GRAMMAR

The Korean Gerund

The gerund (verb + -ing) form of verbs is formed in Korean using the ending -기:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>먹기</th>
<th>going</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>가기</td>
<td>going</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오기</td>
<td>coming</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자기</td>
<td>sleeping</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>일하기</td>
<td>working</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The gerund is used in the following construction:

verb + 기 시작하다

It starts + verb + -ing.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>배는 어떻게 아프기 시작했어요?</th>
<th>When did your stomach start hurting?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Nouns can also be formed from verbs in Korean using the ending 
-고/-을.

**Every: -마다 and 매**

마다 comes at the end of the noun to indicate "every," as in "every June," "everybody," "every student," etc.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Every</th>
<th>Korean</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>every ten years</td>
<td>10 년마다 (십년마다)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>every April</td>
<td>4 월마다 (사월마다)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>every person</td>
<td>사람마다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>every student</td>
<td>학생마다</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Another way to express "every" is by placing 매 in front of a time expression. This expression is usually used as follows.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Every</th>
<th>매</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>every day</td>
<td>매일</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>every week</td>
<td>매주</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>every month</td>
<td>매월</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>every year</td>
<td>매년</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Past Perfect Form -더니**

-더니 is another past tense construction similar to the English expression "used to," which describes a situation that happened in the past, and that is no longer happening due to a change in circumstance. The verb form can be present or past form. The present tense verb + 더니 construction describes the situation from the perspective of the present tense and is used in the context of the present. On the other hand, the past tense verb + 더니 is used in the context of a past tense description, and thus acts as a past perfect tense form.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VERB, TENSE</th>
<th>VERB + 더니</th>
<th>ENGLISH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>가, present</td>
<td>가더니</td>
<td>went (used to go)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>갔, past</td>
<td>갔더니</td>
<td>had gone/went (used to go)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>먹, present</td>
<td>먹더니</td>
<td>ate (used to eat)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>먹었다, past</td>
<td>먹었다더니</td>
<td>had eaten/ate (used to eat)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Positive and Negative Commands: -세요 and -지 마세요**

The positive command form uses the ending -세요. -지 마세요 is a negative command form meaning "Please don’t..." Both are polite and formal expressions.

The positive command form is -세요. We first encountered this form in the greeting 안녕하세요 at the beginning of the lesson. Let’s see more examples with commonly used verbs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>POSITIVE COMMAND -세요</th>
<th>NEGATIVE COMMAND -지 마세요</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>가세요.</td>
<td>가지 마세요.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>공부하세요.</td>
<td>늦지 마세요.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>드세요.</td>
<td>아프지 마세요.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>물 마시지 마세요.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Let’s look at some examples of the negative command form.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NEGATIVE COMMAND -지 마세요</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>가지 마세요.</td>
<td>Don’t go.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>늦지 마세요.</td>
<td>Don’t be late.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아프지 마세요.</td>
<td>Don’t be sick.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>물 마시지 마세요.</td>
<td>Don’t drink water.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**9G. READING**

The following is a doctor’s diagnosis of a patient’s symptoms. Underline the words that you recognize.

김수진씨: Ms. Sujin Kim:
여, 40세: Female, 40 years old
증상: 열이: Symptoms: Fever reached up
40도까지 오른: to 40C.
기침이 심함. 독감 증상이: Serious coughing. Flu symptoms
보일. 다섯 시간 동안 감이: are observed. Reported five hours
났다고 했. 배가 아프다. of sweating. Stomachache.
NEW VOCABULARY

여
증상
오름
보임
함
여품

female
symptoms
reach up
seen
reported, said
hurting

9H. CULTURE TOPIC 2

Many Koreans believe that a certain type of face or body shape can determine a person’s nature, fate, and life story. This is called 괴상학, and even in the 21st century, some older Koreans think that there is a certain truth to it. A round-shaped face on a woman is “lucky,” for example. A person with a round face is said to be generous, kind, and affectionate. A person who has a square face, on the other hand, is resistant and stubborn. Many Koreans believe particularly that square-faced women are resistant and don’t listen to other people’s opinions. The features on a face are said to tell a person’s life story. The top part of the face (from the forehead to the area around the eyes) foretells what a person’s later life will be like. If a person has a large forehead, this means that this person will live richly in later life. The middle part of the face foretells a person’s luck in his or her middle age. If a person has well-proportioned features around the middle, this person will have a balanced life in his or her middle age. The chin and lips tell of the early years of a person’s life. If the lips are thin, the person is not very good at keeping secrets!

EXERCISES

A. Choose the best word from the list to complete the dialogue below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>드셨어요</th>
<th>성함</th>
<th>시작했어요</th>
<th>아파요</th>
<th>예약</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A. 어서오세요. ______ 1 ______이 어떻게 되십니까?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. 김은지예요. 4시 30분 ______ 2 ______ 인쇄요.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. 네. 의사선생님이 곧 나오실 견해요.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. 어디가 아프세요?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. 아침부터 머리가 너무 ______ 3 ______.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. 배는 안 아프세요?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. 배도 아프기 ______ 4 ______.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

B. 어제 밤이나 오늘 아침에 뭐 ______ 5 ______.

B. Fill in the blanks with the best particle.
1. 머리( ) 너무 아파요.
2. 어제밤( ) 오늘 아침에 뭐 드셨습니까?
3. 성함( ) 어떻게 되십니까?
4. 내일( ) 아무 음식도 드시지 마세요.
5. 여섯 시간( ) 한 번씩 드세요.

C. Make positive and negative command forms as directed by the clues in parentheses. Don’t forget to place appropriate particles in the sentences.

Example: 먹다 (음식) → (neg.) 음식을 먹지 마세요.

1. 가다 (학교) → (pos.) _________.
2. 드시다 (술) → (neg.) _________.
3. 드시다 (약) → (pos.) _________.
4. 보다 (책) → (neg.) _________.
5. 배우다 (한국어) → (pos.) _________.

D. Translate the following English sentences into Korean.
1. Come on in! What is your name please? (hon.)

2. I have a 3:30 p.m. reservation.

3. I ate sashimi last night.

4. From now on, drink only water.

5. What brought you here?
**Comprehension Practice**

1. a) 물만 마시세요.  
2. b) 어제 발  
3. b) every six hours  
4. The doctor said that Eunji has food poisoning, or "식중독."  
5. “물만 마시세요” means “only drink water.”

**Exercises**

A. 1. 성함  
2. 약  
3. 야바요.  
4. 시작했어요  
5. 드셨어요

B. 1. 가  
2. 이나  
3. 이  
4. 까지  
5.마다

C. 1. 학교에 가세요.  
2. 물을 드시지 마세요.  
3. 약을 드세요.  
4. 책을 보지 마세요.  
5. 한국어를 배우세요.

D. 1. 어서오세요! 성함이 어떻게 되십니까?  
2. 3시 30분에 약이야요.  
3. 어제 밤이 피로로 몸이 아였어요.  
4. 지금부터 물만 마시세요.  
5. 여기 어떻게 오셨어요?

**INDEPENDENT CHALLENGE**

Let’s use the grammar and the conventional expressions that we learned in this lesson! Think of all the different symptoms that you might have experienced over the past five years. Make a list of ten. Now, translate the symptoms into Korean as best you can. Then, form complete sentences with the symptoms, using the appropriate particles and connectors. Try to use -더니 in three sentences, and use -기 시작했어요 in three sentences. Write the treatment for each case as well, using -지 마세요 or -세요, as if you were giving advice to a patient or a friend.
In this lesson, you will learn expressions you might need when dealing with money and other transactions at the bank. You will learn a new postposition, -만, and the expression of intention, -려고. We'll introduce more past tense constructions in this lesson as well. Let's get started with the vocabulary warm-up!

10A. VOCABULARY WARM-UP

입금 좀 하라고요.
I'd like to make a deposit, please.
알겠습니다.
I see.
60만원만 보내주세요.
Please send 600,000 won only.
예금 통장
checking account
주민 등록증
citizen’s registration card
( equivalent to a social security card)
저금 통장
savings account
상담하면 돼요?
Should I consult ... ?

10B. DIALOGUE

Eunji needs to go to the bank on Saturday morning. She enters her local branch and gets in line.

은행원: 안녕하세요.

은지: 네, 입금 좀 하라고요. 그리고 송금도 필요해요.

은행원: 네, 여기 이 입금표와 송금 내역서를 써 주세요.

은지: 여기 있습니다.

은행원: 모두 얼마 입금하세요?
Comprehension Practice

Answer the following questions based on the dialogue.

1. Why did Eunji go to the bank?
   a) to get money
   b) to set up a checking account
   c) to make a deposit

2. How much money did Eunji want to transfer?
   a) 128만원
   b) 60만원
   c) 2,500만원

3. What did the teller ask Eunji to show?
   a) 주민등록증
   b) 입금표
   c) 송금 내역서

4. How do you say "deposit" in Korean? ____________

5. “How much do I have...?” is ____________

10C. VOCABULARY

입금 (n.)
송금
입금표
송금 내역서
쓰다
주소
알겠습니다 (알다)
은행
통장
저금 통장
예금 통장
현재
 얼마나
주민 등록증
운전 면허증
잠깐만요.
의자
앉다
기다리세요 (기다리다)
상담하다

deposit (n.)
wire transfer
deposit slip
wire transfer document
to write
address
to know
bank
account
savings account
checking account
currently
how much
citizen's registration card
driver's license
Please hold on a second.
chair
to sit
to wait
to consult
Korean banks open later than typical American banks. Many banks open after 9 and operate until 4. When you enter the bank, you should pick up a waiting number first, as you might do at an American deli counter, instead of physically getting in line.

10F. GRAMMAR

More Past Tense Constructions

Let’s take a deeper look at the details of past tense construction. As we learned in Lesson 7, the Korean past tense is placed after a verb and before the sentence ending. The tense in Korean is always marked in this same location in the sentence. Remember that the past tense is marked with three different sounds depending on the feature of the preceding sound. By now, you may have noticed that a lot of Korean grammar is decided by the consonant-and-vowel alternative relations. Take a look at the chart below to review and practice past tense construction.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VERB ENDING WITH NO CONSONANT</th>
<th>VERB ENDING WITH A CONSONANT PRECEDED BY A BRIGHT VOWEL SOUND (“어”)</th>
<th>VERB ENDING WITH A CONSONANT PRECEDED BY A DARK VOWEL SOUND (“어”)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>가 + 았 = 가았어요 (went)</td>
<td>알 + 있 = 알았어요 (knew)</td>
<td>먹 + 었 = 먹었어요 (ate)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| 은행에 가면서 버스를 타고 갔어요. | I went by bus when I went to the bank. |
| 그 동안 한국에서 잘 지냈어요? | Have you been doing well in Korea? |
| 은행에 가서 예금 통장을 만들었어요. | I went to the bank and started a checking account. |
| 아침과 점심을 다 못 먹었어요. | I could eat neither breakfast nor lunch. |
| 언니가 꽃을 사면서 못 채웠어요. | My sister bought flowers while smiling. |

Remember the concept of vowel harmony in Korean: 아 is classified as a bright vowel in Korean, and it accompanies other 아 vowels to be harmonious. 아 is called a dark vowel, and it accompanies other 아 vowels. 이, 오, and 우 are considered dark vowels; 오 is considered a bright vowel.
Here are more examples of the past forms of Korean verbs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VERB</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
<th>PAST FORM WITH A POLITE ENDING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>가다</td>
<td>to go</td>
<td>갔어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이다</td>
<td>to be</td>
<td>여셨어요 (contr. 였어요)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오다</td>
<td>to come</td>
<td>왔어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자다</td>
<td>to go</td>
<td>쫓어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>하다</td>
<td>to do</td>
<td>했어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>공부하다</td>
<td>to study</td>
<td>공부했어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>어릴다</td>
<td>(to be) how</td>
<td>어렸어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>물어보다</td>
<td>to ask</td>
<td>물어봤어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>타다</td>
<td>to get on</td>
<td>타셨어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>돌다</td>
<td>to turn</td>
<td>돌았어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>있다</td>
<td>to have</td>
<td>있었습니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>늦다</td>
<td>to be late</td>
<td>늦었어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>드리다</td>
<td>to give (to someone else)</td>
<td>드렸어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>주다</td>
<td>to give</td>
<td>주셨어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>지내다</td>
<td>to spend time</td>
<td>지내셨어요</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Expressions of Intention**

A person’s intentions are often expressed in English with the use of the infinitive. “I’d like to go” and “I went to the store to buy a soda” are common expressions showing one’s intention to perform an action. The comparable expression in Korean is “verb + -려고.”

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VERB + 러고</th>
<th>願</th>
<th>願</th>
<th>願</th>
<th>願</th>
<th>願</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>은행에 가려고</td>
<td>to go to a bank</td>
<td>願</td>
<td>願</td>
<td>願</td>
<td>願</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>예금 통장을 만들려고</td>
<td>to open a checking account</td>
<td>願</td>
<td>願</td>
<td>願</td>
<td>願</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>입금을 좀 하려고</td>
<td>to place a deposit</td>
<td>願</td>
<td>願</td>
<td>願</td>
<td>願</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The expression “verb + -려고” is often accompanied by the dummy verb -하다 to finish the sentence. There isn’t a huge difference in meaning of

the form with -하다 from the form without; the difference is similarly observed in the English expressions “I went shopping to buy pants” and “I went shopping in order to buy pants.” When using -하다, the tense is applied to the end of the -하다 verb.

**VERB + 러 + -하다**

| 은행에 가려고 했다. | I tried to go to the bank. (past) |
| 은행에 가려고 한다. | I am trying to go to the bank. (present) |
| 은행에 가려고 했어요. | I tried to go to the bank. (past) |
| 은행에 가려고 하겠어요. | I will try to go to the bank. (future/infl./polite) |
| 은행에 가려고 하겠습니다. | I will try to go to the bank. (future/infl./polite) |

**Postposition -만**

We learned that a postposition is a meaningful particle that goes at the end of the noun construction to qualify its meaning. You previously learned the postposition -도, meaning “also” or “too.” Now let’s learn a new postposition: -만, “only.”

**POSTPOSITION -만 (ONLY)**

| 만원만 | only 10,000 won (10,000 won only) |
| 만원만 | only a friend (a friend only) |
| 만원만 | only a bank (a bank only) |

**Expressing Continuous Action with -서**

When -서 appears between two verbs, it connects two continuous actions.

| 가서 보세요 | go and see |
| 와서 드세요 | come and eat |
10G. READING

1. Below is the content of a typical Korean driver's license. Identify the words that you know.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class 2</th>
<th>Driver's license</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2층 보통</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자동차 운전 면허증</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>서울 95-027384-85</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>성명: 김 화철</td>
<td>681212-1978336</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>주소: 서울 동대문 구로 869-13</td>
<td>Address: Seoul dong dae mun gu ro 869-13</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Take a look at this bank form and find the words you know. Try filling it in yourself as an exercise.

Deposit

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Account #:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amount:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I hereby request a deposit of the amount of money above.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Signature:</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

10H. CULTURE TOPIC 2

The Korean unit of currency is the won. The exchange rate for the won has been roughly $1 = 1000 won over the past ten years or so. With 1000 won, you can buy a snack or a soda in the grocery store. The Korean national bank (한국 은행 Hankuk Eunhaeng) issues money in both paper and coin form. 1 won and 5 won coins are practically obsolete and out of use because their values are so low. The coins still in use are 10 won, 50 won, 100 won, and 500 won coins. The paper money begins with 1,000 won, 5,000 won, and 10,000 won bills. The Korean government is planning to design 100,000 won bill, which will become the highest unit in paper money. Koreans do not use personal checks as Americans do. Instead, they use cash or money orders.

EXERCISES

A. Choose the best word from the list to complete the dialogue below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>얼마나</th>
<th>이름</th>
<th>하려고요</th>
<th>서</th>
<th>주소</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A. 뭐가 필요하세요요? 도와드릴까요?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. 네. 여기 입금 좀 1 1.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. 그럼 입금표를 2 주세요.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. 알겠습니다.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. 모두 3 은요?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. 다 120만원이에요.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. 4 씩 쓰 주세요.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. 네! 그래도 숫자도 할게요.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. 얼마나 하시겠어요?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. 이 5 로 50만원 해 주세요.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

B. Use a past tense form to complete the following sentences.

1. 송금 내역서를 쓰 1? (주다)
2. 얼마 2? (필요하다)
3. 예금 통장을 3. (만들다)
4. 은행 의자에서 오랫동안 4. (기다리다)
5. 오늘 처음 통장을 5. (보다)

C. Translate the English sentences into Korean.

1. You’re all set. → 1
2. I need a wire transfer, please. → 2
3. All together, it is 34,000 won. → 3
4. I see. → 4
5. Hold on a second. I’ll call the manager. → 5

D. Translate the English sentences into Korean.

1. I gave only 10,000 won. → 1
2. Minho worked only on Sundays. → 2
3. Eunji deposited only 1,000,000 won last month. → 
4. I intend to open only a savings account. → 
5. I saw her only at three o’clock. → 

**ANSWER KEY**

**Comprehension Practice**

1. c) to make a deposit 2. b) 60만원 3. a) 주민등록증
4. "Deposit" is “입금.”
5. "How much do I have...?" is “... 얼마나 있어요?”

**Exercises**

A. 1. 하라고요 2. 써 3. 얼마 4. 이름 5. 주소
B. 1. 주었어요 2. 필요했어요 3. 만들었어요 4. 기다렸어요
5. 보았어요

C. 1. 날씨가 좋았어요 2. 외부에 필요해요 3. 대 3만 4천원 입니다.
4. 알겠습니다 5. 잠깐만요. 제가 돈을 담당 계장님을 불러 드릴게요.

D. 1. 만원만 주었다 2. 민호는 일요일에만 일했다 3. 운지는 지난 달에 백만원만 입금했다 4. 예금통장만 만들려고 한다.
5. 그녀를 3시에만 보았다.

**INDEPENDENT CHALLENGE**

Now it’s time to work on another journal entry to help enhance your Korean skills! Replicate the chart below in your journal, or do your exercise directly in the book. Try to connect a bank term to a verb or two and make sentences out of the connection using the various tenses you know. Imagine how you would use these expressions at a Korean bank, especially when expressing intention.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BANK TERMS</th>
<th>VERBS</th>
<th>EXPRESSIONS THAT YOU CAN USE AT A BANK</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
In this lesson, you will learn the names of the rooms around a house and the names of household objects. The grammar lesson will include the commenting sentence ending -네, the continuous action -면서, and the expression “it seems that...” Let’s get started with a vocabulary warm-up!

**11A. VOCABULARY WARM-UP**

얼굴 좋아졌네!  You look good! (lit., Your face got better!)
어서 와!  Come on in! (non-pol.)
올케  sister-in-law
올케 언니  older sister-in-law
안방을 좀 넓히고  enlarge the master bedroom and
창고를 없애고  get rid of the storage and
좋은 생각이네!  Good idea!
화장실은 괜찮아.  The bathroom is okay.

**11B. DIALOGUE**

Eunji has been invited to visit her older brother Youngho, who has been thinking recently of remodeling his house.

영호: 은지야, 어서 와!
은지: 오빠, 오래간만이네. 얼굴 좋아졌네!
영호: 그래? 너도 좋아 보인다. 들어 와.
은지: 오빠, 올케 언니는?
영호: 음, 시장 갔어.
은지: 이 집을 리모델링 할 계획이 있다면서?
Comprehension Practice

Answer the following questions based on the dialogue.

1. Whose house are they talking about?
   a) Youngho
   b) Eunji
   c) Minho

2. Where did Youngho's wife go?
   a) 온행
   b) 병원
   c) 시장

3. What does Youngho plan to do with the storage?
   a) 화장실을 만들다
   b) 안방을 만들다
   c) 방을 만든다

4. How do you say “bathroom”?

5. Anbang means ________.

11C. VOCABULARY

얼굴
- 좋-
좋아하다
보다
 좋아 보이다
오다
들어오다
들어와.
오빠/형

올케 언니
응
시장
집
리모델링
계획
있다면서…
움 붙
고쳐 보다 (고치다)
아이들

face
good, nice, okay, positive
to get better
to look
to look good
to come
to enter
Come on in. (non-polite)
older brother (f. speaker/m. speaker)
older brother’s wife (from a woman’s point of view)
yeah
market
house
remodeling
plan
I heard that you had…
this spring
to intend to fix
children
as (they) grow up/as (they) get bigger
getting smaller
to enlarge
small bedroom
more
storage
to get rid of
bathroom
to let it (them) be
It’s okay. (non-pol.)
How will you . . . ? (non-pol.)

11D. KEY PHRASES

Now let’s learn some key vocabulary for items of furniture and rooms around the house.

침실
bedroom
방
bedroom, room
부엌
kitchen
발코니
balcony
창문
window
거실
living room
가구
furniture
책상
desk
침대
bed
화장대
bureau
의자
chair
dining table
소파
sofa
책장
bookshelf
오디오
audio (stereo) set
냉장고
refrigerator

11E. CULTURE TOPIC

Typical Living Environment in Korea

Many Americans are surprised by the environment of Korean housing especially those who come from a spacious home environment. Koreans have been building apartments continuously since the Korean War in order to supply more efficient housing for a large population. This apartment-building boom was initially an economic solution to satisfy most people’s need for comfortable housing, but it has recently become the norm to build a house in Korea. The typical Korean family (parents and one or two children) lives in small-to-medium-sized two- or three-bedroom apartments. This is in stark contrast to years past, when the traditional living situation often included the extended family: uncles, aunts, and grandparents.

11F. GRAMMAR

Sentence Ending with Comment - 네/-네요

As you’ve learned so far in this course, Korean sentence endings mark different grammatical functions and deliver different nuances. Let's outline the endings we’ve learned so far before we introduce a new one.

- 아요/어요  
    polite familiar ending
- 아/-어요  
    non-polite familiar ending
- 습니다  
    polite formal ending
- 습니까  
    polite formal question ending
- 세요  
    polite positive command
- 지 마세요  
    polite negative command
- 요  
    polite short form ending

In this lesson, we’ll learn a new ending: - 네/-네요. - 네/-네요 is commonly used when a speaker is commenting on a situational change or a person’s looks. - 네 is used between friends; -네요 is the polite form. -네요 is also used for commenting, but it is used to comment on older people, as it is accompanied by the polite element - 요.

COMMENT ENDING - 네/-네요

verb + 네  
    non-polite comment
verb + -네요  
    polite comment
Here are some examples of the non-polite comment ending used in sentences. Notice how it is used with the different tenses you’ve learned so far. When - 네 is used with the future tense, - 겠네 is attached before - 네.

| 야구이 아주 좋아졌네! | You look great! (lit., Your face became very good!) |
| 아이들이 크네! | (Your) children are big! |
| 아이들이 크겠네! | (Your) children will be big! |
| 집이 넓네! | (Your) house is large! |
| 집이 넓겠네! | (Your) house will be large! |
| 편찮네! | That's okay! (I am fine!) |
| 편찮겠네! | That will be okay! |

**Successive Action -면서**

-면서 is a conjunction marking either a continuous action or two actions taking place together simultaneously. Its function is similar to the English "as..." or "while...". It comes after the final verb in the first phrase and before the beginning of the second phrase. Some examples of its use are provided below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONTINUOUS/SIMULTANEOUS ACTION CONJUNCTION -면서</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>아이들이 크면서 집이 작아져요.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>운동을 하면서 물을 마셔요.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>백화점에 가면서 은행에도 가요.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**It Seems That ... -ㄴ/은 것 같다 and -는 것 같다**

-ㄴ/은 것 같다 is used to describe a speaker’s current assumption about something that happened in the past. It is attached to the verb root without the past tense marker that you learned previously. Again, there is a variation on this expression, depending on whether the verb ends in a vowel or a consonant. The English verb "seem" is usually accompanied by "that." The Korean expression "it seems" is also accompanied by 것, which functions similarly to the relative clause pronoun "that" in English.

| VERB ENDING WITH A VOWEL + -ㄴ 것 같다 | It seems that she/he/they went... |
| VERB ENDING WITH A CONSONANT + -은 것 같다 | It seems that she/he/they was/were late... |

Here are some examples of expressions using -ㄴ/은 것 같다.

| 음계가 시작에 갓 길하다. | It seems that my older brother’s wife went to the market. (a female speaker) |
| 식중독이 것 같다. | It seems that it was food poisoning. |
| 회를 먹은 것 같다. | It seems that someone ate sushi. |

There is also a present progressive tense of this expression -는 것 같다. It is formed in the same way as its past tense equivalent; there is no modification for vowel/consonant endings. Here are some examples of the expression -는 것 같다.

| 그가 집에 가는 것 같다. | It seems that he is going home. |
| 은지가 공부를 시작하는 것이 같다. | It seems that Eunji is starting to study. |
| 민호가 점심을 먹는 것 같다. | It seems that Minho is eating lunch. |

**Compound Verbs with -하다**

In previous lessons we have seen how the verb -하다 is frequently used in compound verbs. Compound verbs refer to the phenomenon when two verbs come together and act as another verb (e.g., "go fishing"). It is a common phenomenon in Korean, and the verb -하다 is a productive verb in forming a compound. The following chart shows the compound verbs with -하다 that we have studied so far.

| 공부하다 | to study |
| 필요하다 | to be needed |
The following words are only some of the examples of words that are combined with -하다 to form a verb.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>영어하다</td>
<td>to speak English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가능하다</td>
<td>to be possible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>잘하다</td>
<td>to do well</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>일하다</td>
<td>to work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이상하다</td>
<td>to be strange</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>감배하다</td>
<td>to forget</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

-하다 is also used when borrowing English words to create a Korean verb.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>못하다</td>
<td>not to do well</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>노래하다</td>
<td>to sing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>말하다</td>
<td>to speak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>청소하다</td>
<td>to clean</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

리모델링하다  
업데이트하다
조깅하다

to remodel

to update

to jog

11G. READING

The following is a note for a house remodeling plan. Underline and translate the words that you recognize.

집 리모델링 계획
1. 콤방: 넓히다
2. 창문 방: 가구 교환
3. 화장실: 욕조 바꾸기
4. 화장실 창문: 교체
5. 안방: 창문을 더 만든다
6. 정문: 신발장은 만들다

House Remodeling Plan
1. Living room: expand it
2. Bedroom: exchange furniture
3. Bathroom: replace the bathtub
4. Bathroom window: move
5. Inner room: adjust it based on the window
6. Front gate: turn into a shoe closet

NEW VOCABULARY

교환  exchange
욕조    bathtub
교체    replace(ment)
신발장 shoe closet
정문    front gate

11H. CULTURE TOPIC 2

Country Houses and Public Baths

At the beginning of the 21st century, there was a trend for the wealthier people of Seoul to build country houses in the suburbs. These houses are called 전원주택, literally meaning "rural house." People build this type of house for weekend getaways or to be used as a summer house. Some people invest a lot of money in the construction of these rural houses in preparation for their retirement. Most wish to trade in an exhausting metropolitan life in Seoul for the quiet solitude of a rural house in the countryside upon their retirement. These country houses are usually large in size, with spacious front and back yards. Some people grow vegetables in their gardens using their own organic methods.

It is also quite typical in Korea to find public bath facilities near these rural houses, as well as in the cities. The public bath is often supplied with the water from hot springs. There are many places in Korea where hot springs are available for bath facilities. The public bath is divided into two sections: women’s and men’s. The women and the men change their clothes separately and use separate public bathtubs. The big public bathtub is usually located at the center of the facility. Some public baths have a service person to provide a soothing massage. Many foreigners feel odd taking their clothes off in front of others, but Koreans never seem to mind this!
**EXERCISES**

A. Choose the best word from the list to complete the dialogue below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>생각이네</th>
<th>작아져서</th>
<th>그냥</th>
<th>을 봉</th>
<th>넣혀려고</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| A. 집을 고쳐려고?  
B. 응. _____ 1 _____부터 좀 고쳐보려고. 아이들이 크면서 집이 _____ 2 ____.  
A. 어디를 고치려고?  
B. 여기 이 안방을 좀 _____ 3 ____.  
A. 그리고?  
B. 그리고 이 작은 방 옆에 있는 창고를 없애고 방으로 만들려고.  
A. 좋은 _____ 4 _____ 화장실은?  
B. 화장실은 _____ 5 _____ 둘 거야. |

B. Combine the two phrases using the conjunction -면서.
1. (1) 가구를 사다 (2) 의자를 사다
   →
2. (1) 친구를 만나다 (2) 점심을 먹다
   →
3. (1) 회사에 가다 (2) 은행에 가다
   →
4. (1) 공부를 하다 (2) 음악을 듣는다
   →
5. (1) 안방을 넣히다 (2) 창문을 만든다
   →

C. Fill in the blanks with the best particles from the list below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>을 봉</th>
<th>에</th>
<th>은</th>
<th>는</th>
<th>이</th>
<th>가</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 1. 올케는 지금 시장_____ 갔어.  
2. 어디_____ 고치려고?  
3. 여기 이 안방_____ 좀 넣혀려고. |

D. Translate the following English sentences into Korean.
1. I heard you have a plan to remodel this house?
2. I intend to remove the storage over there.
3. I’ll leave the bathroom as is.
4. My children are okay.
5. That’s a good idea!

**ANSWER KEY**

**Comprehension Practice**
1. a) 은지오빠  
2. c) 시장  
3. c) 방을 만든다  
4. "Bathroom" is "화장실." 5. "안방" means "master bedroom."

**Exercises**

A. 1. 은지 오빠  
2. 작아져서  
3. 넣혀려고  
4. 생각이네  
5. 그냥

B. 1. 가구를 사면서 의자를 사다  
2. 친구를 만나면서 점심을 먹다  
3. 회사에 가면서 은행에 가다  
4. 공부를 하면서 음악을 듣는다  
5. 안방을 넣히면서 창문을 만든다

C. 1. 예  
2. 은  
3. 응  
4. 에  
5. 은

D. 1. 이 집을 리모델링 할 계획이 있다면서?  
2. 자기 창고를 없애려고 해.  
3. 화장실은 그냥 두려고 해.  
4. 아이들은 괜찮아.  
5. 좋은 생각이네!
INDEPENDENT CHALLENGE

Write a journal entry about your dream house! Describe the location and the size of your house, as well as the type and number of rooms your dream house will contain. When using number expressions, don’t forget to use noun counters at the end of the number, such as -가, for counting rooms and other general household objects. Make a list of items you need to furnish your house, including a chair, a sofa, a TV, a computer, bookshelves, and more. Draw the layout of the house next to your journal entry. As extra practice, try using the new expressions and endings you’ve learned in conversation with a Korean speaker, or simply write down the phrases you come up with in your journal.

LESSON

12

Grandmother’s Birthday

In this lesson, we will learn Korean family terms and titles for relatives. Grammar lessons will include a non-polite question ending, -니, and a non-polite suggestive ending, -자. You will learn clear polite/non-polite distinctions, as well as more present tense expressions. Let’s get started with a vocabulary warm-up!

12A. VOCABULARY WARM-UP

어떻게 해요?
가까운 분들을 초대하자.
좋을까요?
⋯어떻게?
뭐가 좋겠어요?
좋은 생각이 있어요!
새 한복

What should (we) do? (pol.)
Let’s invite relatives and close friends.
Will it be good to…?
What about…? (non-pol.)
What would be good? (non-pol.)
I have a good idea!
new hanbok (Korean traditional costume)

12B. DIALOGUE

Minho is at his mother’s house discussing his grandmother’s birthday party next week. Minho and his mother are planning to invite all of their relatives.

민호: 어머니, 할머니 생신이 다음 주 주말인데, 어떻게 해요?
어머니: 글쎄, 우선 친척들과 가까운 분들을 초대하자. 할머니, 할아버지, 큰아버지, 큰어머니, 그리고 사촌들은 물론이고.
민호: 어디서 파티를 하는 게 좋을까요?
어머니: 신라 호텔에서 하는 게 어떻까요?
민호: 거기 열고, 시간에 있는 조선 호텔은 어때요?
어머니: 거기에 더 낫겠니?
민호: 네, 다음 주에 거기에서 십나는 서커스쇼가 있다고 들었어요.
어머니: 그럼, 거기로 하자. 큰아버지, 큰어머니 내일 물어보고, 둘째 큰아버지, 둘째 큰어머니께는 데가 전화를 걸어.
민호: 네, 알겠어요. 그럼 어머니께서는 작은 성춘고 작은 외숙모께 전화를 거세요. 성춘들은 자기들이 앞에서 올 거예요.
어머니: 할머니 선물을 뭐가 좋겠니?
민호: 저에게 좋은 생각이 있어요! 한복을 새로 해 드리요!

Minho: Mother, grandmother's birthday is next weekend; what should we do?
Mother: Well, first of all, let's invite our relatives and close friends—Grandmother, Grandfather, your older uncle and aunt, and your cousins, of course.
Minho: Where would be a good place to throw the party?
Mother: How about Hotel Shilla?
Minho: Not that place, but how about Hotel Chosun in the city?
Mother: Would that place be better?
Minho: Yes, I heard that they have a fun circus show over there.
Mother: Well then, let's decide on that place. You call older Uncle and Aunt (Uncle’s couple), and second oldest Uncle and Aunt.
Minho: Yes, I see. Then Mother, you call younger Uncle and Aunt, please. All the cousins will come, having heard (knowing) of the birthday party.
Mother: What will be a good present for your grandmother?
Minho: I got a good idea! Let's give her a new hanbok!

Comprehension Practice
Answer the following questions based on the dialogue.

1. Who will not be invited?
   a) 큰아버지  b) 서촌들  c) 할아버지
2. What will be happening at the Hotel Chosun next weekend?
   a) 한복 b) 점심 c) 서커스
3. Who will not be coming to the party?
   a) 큰아버지  b) 은지  c) 할아버지
4. How do you say "gift"? ______________.
5. “생신” means ____________.

12C. VOCABULARY

- 네데
  할머니
  할아버지
  생신
  생일
  우설
  초대하다
  초대하자
  람가
  친척들
  서촌들
  물론이다
  어디서...하는게 좋을까요?
  시내
  어찌까? (어찌다)
  큰아버지
  큰어머니
  내외분

and (used between two events)
grandmother
grandfather
birthday (hon.)
birthday (for younger people)
first of all
to invite
Let's invite... (infml.)
ending used for an undecided future
relatives
kins
of course
Where would be good to...? (pol.)
city/downtown
How about...? (infml.)
older uncle (father’s older brother)
older aunt (father’s older brother’s wife)
a husband and a wife (hon.)
12E. CULTURE TOPIC 1

Koreans call family members by their titles (their relationship to the speaker) and not by their first names. It is similar to Americans calling their mothers "Mom" and not typically by their mother's name. An older brother would be called 형 if you are a man and 오빠 if you are a woman. An older sister would be called 언니 if you are a woman and 누나 if you are a man. Unlike the rest of Korean grammar, these terms are gender-sensitive depending on both the speaker and the listener. There is one term for a younger sibling, regardless of the gender of either the speaker or the listener: 동생.

Koreans also use names with an ending. After a name ending in a consonant, add -아, and after a name ending in a vowel, add -야. These are only attached to a person's first name: 현숙아, 기원아, 꽃님야, or 민수아, 은지야, 경호야, etc. This ending only applies when the person is a friend or younger person. It is rude to call older people directly by their names in Korean culture, so Koreans substitute the name with the person's title, such as 선생님, 손님 (Mr. client), or put -씨 after his or her name.

12F. GRAMMAR

Present Tense Formation and the Progressive -고 있-
Korean present tense is expressed in three ways: (1) non-tense + ending, (2) -ㄴ/는다, and (3) -고 있 + ending.

(i) NON-TENSE + ENDING
The non-tense form is a verb infinitive plus some kind of ending. This form is used to describe the actions taken.
(2) -니/는다

-니/는다는 사용을 통해 현재 이벤트를 설명하는 데 사용할 수 있는 단순 현재 형식을 사용할 수 있습니다. 이는 비 Plain non-

| 간다!   | (I/We/You/He/She/They) go/goes (now)! |
| 먹는다! | (I/We/You/He/She/They) eat/eats (now)!
| 운동한다! | (I/We/You/He/She/They) exercise/exercises (now)!

(3) -고 있-

-고 있+ (tense marker) + ending” is close to the progressive form, which in English is expressed as “to be + verb + ing.” In Korean, this form indicates that an action has already begun and is still taking place at the time.

| 가고 있다 | am/is/are going |
| 먹고 있다 | am/is/are eating |
| 운동하고 있다 | am/is/are exercising |

The different levels of politeness can accompany this progressive form, and tense markers can be used to form the past and future progressive tenses.

### Present Progressive

| 가고 있다 | am/is/are going (politeness non-marked) |
| 가고 있어요 | am/is/are going (polite/infml.) |
| 가고 있습니까 | am/is/are going (polite/fml.) |

### Past Progressive

| 가고 있었어요 | was/were going (polite/infml.) |
| 가고 있었습니다 | was/were going (polite/fml.) |

### Future Progressive

| 가고 있을게요. | (I/We) will be going . . . (polite) |
| 가고 있을 거예요. | (I/We/He/She/They) will be going . . . (polite) |

#### Question Endings -니? and -ㅂ/습니까?

You have so far observed that a raised tone at the end of a sentence can create an inexact question ending in various situations. To ask an explicit question in Korean, you will need to use a question ending, either -니? or -ㅂ/습니까?. -니 is used when speaking to a younger person or to a friend, so it is called an informal, non-polite question marker. When directing a question to a person who is older than you, to someone of a higher position, or in formal situations, use -ㅂ/습니까?

#### QUESTION ENDINGS -니 AND -ㅂ/습니까?

| 가 + -니? = 가니? | Are you going? (to a friend/a younger person) |
| 먹 + -니? = 먹니? | Are you eating? (to a friend/a younger person) |
| 가 + -ㅂ니까? = 갑니까? | Are you going? (to an older person) |
| 먹 + -ㅂ니까? = 먹습니까? | Are you eating? (to an older person) |

Make sure you are careful when using the informal forms. Some people might take offense at overly informal Korean usage.

| 음악을 듣으면서 집에 가니? | Are you going home while listening to the music? (between friends) |
| 왜 그렇게 점심을 빠리 먹니? | Why are you eating lunch so quickly? (between friends) |
Non-polite Suggestive -자 and Polite Suggestive -ㅂ시다

To suggest an action to someone, you will need to use a suggestive verb ending following the verb stem. This is similar to the expression "let's..." in English.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NON-POLITE SUGGESTIVE -자</th>
<th>POLITE SUGGESTIVE -ㅂ시다</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>들어가 + 자 = 들어가자.</td>
<td>Let's go in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>먹 + 자 = 먹자.</td>
<td>Let’s eat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>공부하 + 자 = 공부하자.</td>
<td>Let’s study.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>들어가 + ㅂ시다 = 들어갑시다.</td>
<td>Let's go in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>먹 + 익시다 = 먹으십시오.</td>
<td>Let’s eat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>공부하 + ㅂ시다 = 공부하십시오.</td>
<td>Let’s study.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

More Korean Postpositions and Verb Endings

You were introduced to some new postpositions and verb endings in the dialogue; let’s take a look at three of them here.

a) 데 is a postposition meaning "and" when used between two events.

Grandmother’s birthday is next weekend, (and) what should we do?

b) ㅂ시다 = verb ending used for an undecided future.

어디서 파티를 하는 게 좋을까요?  
Where would be a good place to throw the party?

c) 고 at the end of the clause acts as quotation marker.

다음 주에 가지에서
신나는 서커스 쇼가이라고 들었어요.  
I heard that they have a fun circus show over there. ("They have a fun circus show over there," I heard.)

12G. READING

The following is an invitation from Youngho’s aunt. Underline and translate the family-related terms that you know.

영호야,

잘 있었니?

여번 햄버거 생선에 가족들이 다 모이기로 했다. 네 아이들도
데리고 큰아버지 집으로 왔다. 거기에 큰어머니와 이모, 이모부,
그리고 내 사촌들이 모두 올겨야. 나도 갈게!

Dear Youngho,

How have you been?

All of the family members decided to get together for Grandfather’s birthday party. Come with your children to older Uncle’s house. Older Aunt, (mother’s side) Aunt and Uncle, and your cousins all will come. I’ll go too!

12H. CULTURE TOPIC 2

Korean Familism and the Parent-Child Bond

The strong family bond among Koreans is called “familism.” Understanding Korean familism is important for understanding various social relations in Korean culture. Koreans are educated to revere, respect, and learn from their parents, grandparents, and other older relatives. Parents, grandparents, and other older relatives give love and support to their children, nephews, and nieces both financially and emotionally. While children are still in school, Korean parents conventionally support their children’s school-related exercises as much as they can.
The financial involvement of parents with their children in most parts of the Western world ends when children reach the age of eighteen. Beyond this age, most children are on their own and begin to lead an independent life. In contrast, Korean parents feel obligated to take care of their children until the children are married. In other words, Korean parents acknowledge adulthood at the point of marriage. Wedding expenses—including the ceremony fee and gifts to families—are paid by the parents and close relatives, with the help of their children.

In return, it is the children who take care of the parents in Korea as they get older. The children assume this responsibility up to the death of the parent, no matter how difficult the care might be. The adult children feel obligated to take care of their parents as their parents took care of them when they were young. This family bond is a very strong facet of Korean culture and an important factor in understanding Koreans and their lives.

**EXERCISES**

A. Choose the best word from the list to complete the dialogue below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>들어가자</th>
<th>선물</th>
<th>안녕하세요</th>
<th>있었니</th>
<th>준비</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

어머니: 식사 ___1___ 다 했는데, 다들 언제 오시지?

민호: 저기 할아버지 오신다! 할아버지, ___2___!

할아버지: 오, 그래. 잘 ___3___?

민호: 네, 그렇요.

할아버지: ___4___, 여기 어머니에게 ___5___ 받아라.

민호: 네.

B. Follow the example to make the informal non-polite suggestive “Let’s…” expression by modifying the given sentences.

Example: 동생하고 먹는다 → 동생하고 먹자!

1. 언니하고 간다 → ____________________!
2. 차 타고 온다 → ____________________!
3. 집 안에 들어간다 → ____________________!
4. 밥리 준비한다 → ____________________!
5. 저녁 식사한다 → ____________________!

C. Translate the following Korean phrases into English.

1. 잘 있었니?
2. 저기 큰 아버지 내외분도 오시니!
3. 요즘 공부는 재미있니?
4. 벌써 했어요.
5. 할아버지 할머니께 인사했니?

D. Fill in the blanks with the calling particles.

(example) 민호 → 민호야!

1. 정수 → ____________________
2. 선미 → ____________________
3. 태권 → ____________________
4. 희진 → ____________________
5. 수영 → ____________________

**ANSWER KEY**

**Comprehension Practice**

1. b) 사촌들  2. c) 서커스  3. b) 은지
4. “Gift” is “선물.”
5. “생신” means “birthday.”

**Exercises**

A. 1. 준비  2. 안녕하세요  3. 있었니  4. 들어가자  5. 선물

B. 1. 언니하고 가자  2. 차 타고 오자  3. 집 안에 들어가자  4. 밥리 준비하자  5. 저녁 식사하자

C. 1. Have you been doing well?
2. There, Uncle and Aunt are coming!
3. Is studying fun these days?
4. I already did.
5. Did you greet your grandfather and grandmother?

D. 1. 정수야!  2. 선미야!  3. 태권야!  4. 희진야!  5. 수영야!
LESSON
13

A Trip to Jeju Island

In this lesson, we will learn traveling terms and more expressions related to time. We'll learn about the famous tourist attraction Jeju Island in the dialogue, and how to say “to become” and “to be able to” in the grammar sections. Let's get started with a vocabulary warm-up!

13A. VOCABULARY WARM-UP

비행기표 예약했어요.  
I reserved the ticket.

왕복  
round trip

값이 비싸질 거예요.  
The price will become expensive.

휴가 낼 수 있어요?  
Can you ask for a vacation?

말씀드려보겠어요.  
I will try to ask.

제 대학 동창이이에요.  
(He) is my college friend.

이침 일찍  
early in the morning

부럽다!  
I'm jealous!

13B. DIALOGUE

For her summer vacation, Eunji is planning a trip to Jeju Island, the famous south seaside attraction in Korea. Chris is curious about her plans.

크里斯: 은지씨, 이번 여름에 어디에 가세요?

은지: 제주도에 가요. 지금 비행기표 예약했어요!

크里斯: 제주도 비행기표는 얼마나예요?

은지: 왕복에 14만원 꼭 해요. 곧 값이 비싸질 거예요.

크里斯: 아, 저도 가고 싶어요. 언제 떠나요?
Comprehension Practice

Answer the following questions based on the dialogue.

1. With whom is Eunji going on summer vacation?
   a) 민지하고 철수   b) 크리스   c) 진희하고 성훈

2. What does Chris say in response to Eunji’s last line, when she tells him they’re off to play?
   a) 언제 떠나요?   b) 그래요?   c) 와, 부럽다!

3. When are they leaving for Jeju Island?
   a) 7월 24일   b) 7월 28일   c) 7월 14일

4. “휴가” means _________.

5. “황복” means _________.

13C. VOCABULARY

여행  tri p
여름  summer
-도 island
제주도 Jeju Island
비행기  flight
표  ticket
비행기표 plane ticket
예약하다 to reserve
- Aynı about (amount)
곧 soon
값 price
to become expensive
비싸지다 to leave
떠나다 duration of time, during
-간 when, time
-때 vacation
to leave for a vacation
to be able to
휴가 section chief
to (someone) (hon.)
과장님
-께
13D. KEY PHRASES

The following phrases are essential expressions for travelling. You will be likely hear many of these expressions at any Korean airport.

비행기 
airplane, flight
비행 시간이 언제요? 
When is the flight?
비행기가 연착했습니다. 
The flight is delayed.
도착 시간이 지연되었습니다. 
The arrival is going to be delayed.
항공
airline
대한 항공
Korean Airlines
아시아나 항공
Asiana Airlines
편도표
one-way ticket
왕복표
round-trip ticket
do착하다
to arrive
to depart
출발하다
boarding time
ticket-issuing desk
안내소
information desk
공항 대기실
airport waiting room
세관
customs
금연 구역
non-smoking area
가판대
newsstand

to tell/to ask

to try

to play

to be envious

13E. CULTURE TOPIC 1

Airline Companies in Korea

There are two major airlines in Korea: Korean Airlines and Asiana Airlines. Asiana Airlines began business in 1988, far later than Korean Airlines, but has recently gained a good reputation and is competing well with Korean Airlines. Traveling to and from Korea is mostly done by plane, but people from some neighboring countries—such as China or Japan—sometimes travel by boat as well. Flights from the United States to Incheon National Airport usually take 14 to 20+ hours, depending on the connecting flight schedule and the point of departure. Getting around Korea is easy and convenient using public transportation such as train, bus, car, taxi, or plane.

13F. GRAMMAR

Expressing Ability: -아/을 수 있다

-아/을 수 있다 is used in Korean to express one’s ability. It is similar to the English “can” or “to be able to.” If the preceding sound is a vowel, use -아 수 있다, and if the preceding sound is a consonant, use -을 수 있다.
VERB + -ㄹ/을 수 있다 = TO BE ABLE TO + VERB
가 + ㄹ 수 있다 = to be able to go
간나 + ㄹ 수 있다 = to be able to meet
능 + 을 수 있다 = to be able to be late
받 + 을 수 있다 = to be able to receive

인천에 언제쯤 갈 수 있을까요?
일요일에 팀장님을 만날 수 있었어요.
이렇게 천천히 가면 늦을 수 있겠어요!
세 시까지 이 가방들을 다 받을 수 있겠어요?

When will you be able to go to Incheon?
I was able to meet the team chief on Monday.
We could be late if we go like this!
Will you be able to receive this luggage by three o'clock?

To Become: -어/아 지다

-어/아 지다 is a form that indicates a change in status or situation. It is similar to the English expressions "to become" or "to turn (into)." The verb's sound quality alternates the choice of the ending. The bright vowels, such as 아, 오, etc., will take -아 지다, whereas dark vowels, such as 어, 우, and 이, will take -어 지다.

ADJECTIVAL VERB -어/아 지다 = BECOME ... / TURN INTO ...
비싸다 + 아 지다 = 비싸지다 (1) to become expensive
좋다 + 아 지다 = 좋아지다 to become good
나쁘다 + 아 지다 = 나쁘지다 (2) to become bad
작다 + 아 지다 = 작아지다 to become small

너다 + 어 지다 = 네어지다 to become large
아프다 + 아 지다 = 아파지다 (2) to become sick
가능하다 + 아 지다 = 가능해지다 (3) to become possible
이상하다 + 아 지다 = 이상해지다 to become strange
어렵다 + 어 지다 = 어려워지다 (4) to become difficult
재미있 + 어 지다 = 재미있어지다 to become funny

(1) Two 아s will be contracted to one 아 sound.
(2) Weak vowel 오 from the verb stem drops.
(3) All 하다 verbs will follow 해 지다.
(4) Bottom 보 usually undergoes a sound change into 우 (w) sound due to the features of Korean phonology.

고양이 많이 비싸졌어요!
크리스 아직 한국어 공부는 많이 좋아지셨어요?
요즘 눈이 너무 나빠지는 거 같아요.
The price of the flowers got really expensive!
Chris, did your Korean studies get a lot better?
My eyes are getting bad these days.

The Future Gradual: Expressing "Will Become"
The Future Gradual is used in Korean to express a gradual change that takes place in the future. Take a look at the following formula:

(Descriptive verb) + 지 + 을 거예요 = will become (descriptive verb)

The 걸거예요 portion of this pattern shows a combination of two grammatical forms. First, -지 is used to refer to a gradual change ("become/turn into"), and the second part 을 거예요 signifies that the act takes place in the future. Let's look at how this is used in complete sentences.
Expressing Attempt: -어/아 보다

When attached to a Korean verb, -어/아 보다 is used to express an attempt to perform the action explained in the verb. -어 보다 follows bright vowels (voie, oie, etc), and -아 보다 follows dark vowels (우, 어, 이, etc).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VERB + 어/아 보다 = TRY VERB + -ING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>가+보다 = 가 보다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>받+아 보다 + 받아 보다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>예약하+아 보다 = 예약해 보다*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>먹+어 보다 = 먹어 보다</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* All 하다 verbs will change into 해보다.

I'll try going to the movie theater.
Will you be receiving the email?
I tried reserving.
It's the first time for me to try this food.

Dates

Dates in Korean are expressed in the following order: year, month, day. You need to place year (년), month (월), and the day (일) after each number.

| 2008 년 5 월 7 일 | May 7th, 2008 |
| 2035 년 8 월 29 일 | August 29th, 2035 |
| 1876 년 1 월 14 일 | January 14th, 1876 |

136. READING

The following is an itinerary for travel to a Korean island called 아울렛도, which is located on the East Coast, between Korea and Japan. Some of the words are the area names of actual Korean locations and some of the words are English loan words; try saying these new words out loud to see which words are which.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>날짜</th>
<th>지역</th>
<th>교통편</th>
<th>시간</th>
<th>여행일정</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>제1일</td>
<td>서울</td>
<td>버스</td>
<td>6.30</td>
<td>역서 근처 야 출발</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>목포</td>
<td>체리</td>
<td>9.00</td>
<td>아침식사</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>울릉도</td>
<td>해양</td>
<td>10.00</td>
<td>목포출발</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>12.20</td>
<td>울릉도 도착</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>13.00</td>
<td>점심 식사</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>15.00</td>
<td>약수원 및 케이블 카 (항포사료관, 목포김나방, 약수봉 마사지)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>18.00</td>
<td>저녁 식사 (특별식 - 약수봉고기)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>속소 - 한국 리조트호텔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>제2일</td>
<td>울릉도</td>
<td>유람선</td>
<td>7.30</td>
<td>아침 식사</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>미니버스</td>
<td>8.30</td>
<td>목포관광 여행 (4시간 소요), 점심</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>13.00</td>
<td>불래 목포</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>14.00</td>
<td>셔틀 투어 (특별식 - 흥화바)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>16.00</td>
<td>저녁 식사 (특별식 - 오징어 볶음)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>속소 - 울릉도 호텔</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Place</th>
<th>Transportation</th>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Travel Activities</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>First day</td>
<td>Seoul</td>
<td>Bus</td>
<td>6.30</td>
<td>Start at Deoksu Gung front gate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>9.00</td>
<td>Breakfast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mukho</td>
<td>Ferry</td>
<td>10.00</td>
<td>Leave for Mukho</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>12.20</td>
<td>Arrive Ulleungdo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ulleungdo</td>
<td></td>
<td>13.00</td>
<td>Lunch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>15.00</td>
<td>Yaksu park and cable car ride</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>18.00</td>
<td>Dinner (special - medicinal beef bulgogi)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Lodging - Korea Resort Hotel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date</td>
<td>Place</td>
<td>Transportation</td>
<td>Time</td>
<td>Travel Activities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>----------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Second day</td>
<td>Ulleungdo</td>
<td>Cruise</td>
<td>7:30</td>
<td>Breakfast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Mini Bus</td>
<td>8:30</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>13:00</td>
<td>Tour on foot (four hours), Sung-In peak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>14:00</td>
<td>Lunch (special – Mussel rice)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>16:00</td>
<td>Bong-Rae Fall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>18:30</td>
<td>Island cruise – about two hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Dinner (special – raw squid sushli)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Lodging – Ulleungdo Hotel</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

13H. Culture Topic 2

Jeju Island, a Popular Honeymoon Destination

There was a time when Koreans were not allowed to fly freely outside of the country, partly because of policy exercised under strong Korean military politicians in the 1970s. These politicians restricted travel, attempting to control the influx of information. It was also uncommon for Koreans to travel outside of Korea because of slow economic development at the time. These days, however, Koreans travel all around the world freely and frequently.

Despite the change in the travel opportunities for Koreans, Jeju Island has been and is still one of the most visited places for Korean honeymooners. Jeju Island is a truly exotic island with its beautiful scenery and peaceful beaches, as well as a tall volcanic mountain at the center—Mountain Hanra. Mountain Hanra is said to have four seasons all at once, depending on where you are on the height of the mountain. In this area, however, the weather changes rapidly without warning, so some say that Mountain Hanra is a dangerous hiking spot for novice hikers. There are many pastures full of strong and sturdy horses surrounding the mountainous region. Jeju has long been known for these horses; Korean kings used to request the highest quality horses be sent to them from Jeju. The other famous attraction is 해녀 (the sea women). The sea women have a unique method of fishing; they jump into the water without the aid of any SCUBA gear and collect seafood from the sea, often to serve the fresh seafood to visitors. Trying the fresh seafood from the sea women is quite a lure to the island!

EXERCISES

A. Choose the best word from the list to complete the dialogue below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>과장님</th>
<th>휴가</th>
<th>예약했어요</th>
<th>떠나요</th>
<th>간</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A: 이번 여름에 갈 비행기표는 __<strong><strong><strong>1</strong></strong></strong>?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B: 네, 7월 12일 1시에 __<strong><strong><strong>2</strong></strong></strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A: 얼마나 간 있을 거예요?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B: 4일 __<strong><strong><strong>3</strong></strong></strong> 있을 거예요.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A: 저도 가고 싶어요!</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B: __<strong><strong><strong>4</strong></strong></strong> 채 한번 말씀 드리려 보세요.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A: __<strong><strong><strong>5</strong></strong></strong> 를 날 수 있을 거예요.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

B. Complete the sentences with verb + -리/을 수 있다.

1. 6월에 휴가 날다 → 6월에 휴가 낼 수 있다
2. 선생님께 말씀드리 보다 → ____________________
3. 5시 30분에 만나다 → ____________________
4. 그 사람이 대학 동창이다 → ____________________
5. 친화하고 같이 가다 → ____________________

C. Complete the sentence with -여/아 보았다 as a past form. Choose the best verb from the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>만나다</th>
<th>예약하다</th>
<th>하다</th>
<th>날다</th>
<th>먹다</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
1. 이침을 제주도에서 ____________________
2. 3일 동안 휴가를 ____________________
3. 미국에서 비행기 표를 ____________________
4. 어제 한국어 공부를 ____________________
5. 오늘 그 친구를 ____________________

D. Translate the following English sentences into Korean.

1. Wow, I'm envious! → ____________________
2. I am going with my two friends. → ____________________
3. Seong Hoon is my college friend. → ____________________
I’d like to go too! → 
What time is your flight? →

ANSWER KEY

Comprehension Practice
1. c) 진화하고 성훈  2. c) 와, 부럽다!  3. a) 7월 24일

Exercises
A. 1. 예약했어요  2. 떠나요  3. 간  4. 과장님  5. 휴가
B. 1. 6월에 떠날 수 있다
  2. 선생님께 말씀 드려 볼 수 있다
  3. 5시 30분에 만날 수 있다
  4. 그 사람이 대학 동창일 수 있다
  5. 진화하고 같이 갈 수 있다
C. 1. 먹어보았다  2. 내어 보았다  3. 예약해 보았다  4. 해 보았다
  5. 만나보았다
D. 1. 와, 부럽네요!
  2. 제 친구들 두 명하고 같이 가요.
  3. 성훈이는 제 대학 동창이에요.
  4. 자도 가지고 싶어요!
  5. 비행기 시간은 언제예요?

INDEPENDENT CHALLENGE

Write up an itinerary for a four-day trip to Jeju Island. You are going on this trip with two Korean friends and two American friends. All of you are currently staying in Seoul, so try to figure out the best way to get there. Find more ideas about Jeju Island from the official Jeju Island Government’s Tourism site at http://tour.jeju.net. Write a list of places to visit each day. Budget a trip to be shared by five friends. Use the popular Korean search engine Empas at http://search.empas.com to find extra information and facts about Jeju. Enjoy your trip!
In this lesson, you'll learn many restaurant terms and how to order food in Korean. You will also learn how to form causal expressions (because . . .), how to express plans for yourself (I should . . .), and how to express "although" in Korean. Let's get started with some new vocabulary!

14A. VOCABULARY WARM-UP

해물파전  
seafood-scallion pancake  
국수  
noodles  
비빔밥  
bibimbap (rice bowl)  
야채 비빔밥  
vegetable bibimbap  
불고기  
bulgogi (Korean BBQ)  
-pillsz 않지요?  
It is not spicy? (rhetorical question)  
맛있는  
delicious  
더 맛있어요!  
More delicious!

14B. DIALOGUE

Chris and Eunji are sitting at a casual restaurant on a busy Seoul street. It's their lunch break, and they are ordering lunch.

은지: 크리스, 오늘은 뭐 먹고 싶어요?

크리스: 어제는 해물파전을 먹었으니, 오늘은 국수를 먹고 싶어요!

은지: 그래요? 저는 어제 국수를 먹었으니까, 오늘은 좀 다른 거를 먹어야 겠어요.

크리스: 뭐가 좋아요? 혹시 튀김은 어때요?

은지: 튀김은 삶이 짜서 안 돼요. 야채를 좀
Chris: Yes, but now, spicy food is more delicious to me too!

Comprehension Practice

Answer the following questions based on the dialogue.

1. What did Eunji decide to order?
   a) 아재 뒤김
   b) 불고기
   c) 비빔밥

2. What does Chris think of Korean food?
   a) 멕시코 음식이 좋아요
   b) 한국 음식이 매워요
   c) 한국 음식은 안 매워요

3. Why Eunji did not choose to eat 뒤김?
   a) 아재 먹었으니까
   b) 매운 음식이니까
   c) 싶이지니까

4. “Delicious” is ____________.

5. “Noodles” are ____________.

14C. VOCABULARY

to eat
seafood scallion pancake
meat
Is that so?
noodles
because/since
different
thing (colloquial)
I should...
maybe
tempura (battered-fried food)
because (it is) fattening
vegetables
bibimbap (rice bowl)
that thing (colloquial)
food
amongst/among
the most/the best
14D. KEY PHRASES

The following expressions are useful whether dining out or in.

음식이 아주 맛있어요!
The food is very delicious!
색깔이 참 좋아요!
The color is great!
냄새가 기가 막혀요!
The smell is so wonderful!
국물이 아주 시원해요.
This soup has a very
refreshingly good taste.
요리를 아주 잘
하시는네요!
Your cooking skills are
excellent!
좀 더 주세요!
Please give me some more!
맛이 좀 짜 것 같아요.
It tastes a little bit salty.
소금 좀 주세요.
Please pass (give) me
the salt.
설탕 좀 주세요.
Please pass (give) me
the sugar.
후추 좀 주세요.
Please pass (give) me
the black pepper.
후식 있어요?
Is there dessert? (lit., Do we
have dessert?)
잘 먹었습니다.
The food was great!
배가 너무 불러요,
I am well stuffed, thank you.
감사합니다.
Some water, please.
물 좀 주세요.
Do you have ice water?

14E. CULTURE TOPIC 1

The Korean Dinner Invitation

In the Korean family culture, only one's closest friends will be invited
to a family dinner, even when it is a casual occasion. Therefore, it is quite
an honor to be invited to a dinner as a friend of the family. Dining out
together is a more common practice than dining at home, especially in
Seoul, where there are so many great restaurants, and the food is usually
available at a relatively inexpensive price. For a home-cooked family
dinner, an invitation is sent out to those who are considered to be most
important and meaningful to the family. The host (or, more commonly,
the hostess) will cook a grand-scale meal for the guests on special occa-
Homemakers put in a lot of time preparing many different kinds of foods just to amuse the dinner guests. Thus, as an invited guest, it is courteous to compliment the food.

14F. GRAMMAR

Adjectives, Comparatives, and Superlatives

Adjectives in Korean behave very similarly to the way they behave in English: the adjective will appear before a noun in a sentence. Take a look at the following list of adjectives describing Korean food and then at the examples of how they work in sentences.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>嫩한</td>
<td>tender</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>청진</td>
<td>stringy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>날, 섬임을</td>
<td>raw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>달콤한</td>
<td>sweet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>맛 좋은</td>
<td>delicious, savory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>매운</td>
<td>hot, spicy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>잡았던</td>
<td>flat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>시큼한</td>
<td>sour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>신선하지 않은</td>
<td>stale</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>신선한</td>
<td>fresh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>섹은</td>
<td>rotten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>쓴</td>
<td>bitter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>양념 맛이 강한</td>
<td>strongly spiced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>짜뜻한</td>
<td>salty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>중미있는</td>
<td>in a full-flavor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Many adjectives in Korean are identified as "modified verbs."

- 맵 (verb form) → 매운 (modified to an adjective) it is spicy
- 층다 → 추운 it is cold
- 달다 → 더운 it is hot
- 빵다 → 쉬운 it is easy

With the ending -어/어, the 어 changes the sound from /b/ to /w/.

한국 음식에 매운 음식이 많아요. There are a lot of spicy Korean foods.

한국 음식은 너무 매워요. Korean food is too spicy.

COMPARATIVES

It's very easy to create comparatives in Korean. Simply place 더 in front of the adjective to indicate "more."

한국 음식이 더 매워요? Is Korean food spicier?

In the same manner, 덜 is used to express "less."

한국 음식이 덜 매워요? Is Korean food less spicy?

SUPERLATIVES

To express superlatives in Korean, use 제일 (the most) or 가장 (the best).

미국에서는 저한테 제일 매운 음식이 멕시코 음식이었어요. In the States, the spiciest food was Mexican food to me.

한국에서 가장 맛있는 음식은 불고기예요. The most delicious food in Korea is bulgogi.
Because/Since: -(으)니 or -(으)니까
-(으)니 or -(으)니까 is added to the end of a Korean phrase to make a causal connection. This expression adds the meaning 'because' to the sentence. -(으)니 or -(으)니까 is located at the end of the phrase, not at the end of the sentence. The second part of the sentence using the -(으)니 or -(으)니까 structure usually states the result of the previous causal phrase. Look at the following examples:

CAUSAL EXPRESSION -(으)니 OR -(으)니까

음식이 맛있으니 좋아요. Because the food is delicious, it's good. Because the food is delicious.

공부를 많이 하니까 학교가 재미있어요. Because I study a lot, school is fun. Because I study a lot.

첫 식을 많이 먹었으니까 저녁이 안 맛을게요. Because I ate plenty of lunch, I will not eat dinner.

열심히 일을 했으니까 저녁에는 놀겠다요. Because I worked diligently, I will go out in the evening.

(i) Should ... : -어/아/야 겠다
-어/아/야 겠다 is an expression added to a verb to express that the speaker feels obligated to perform the action or to express what the speaker will be doing in the future. It is equivalent to 'should' or 'ought to' in English. The alternation between 어 or 아 follows the vowel harmony in Korean. 어 is used and contracted for 하 verbs.

-어/아/야 겠다 = (i) SHOULD

가야 겠다. (i) should go.

놀어야 겠다. (i) should play.

일해야 겠다. (i) should work.

나는 국수를 만들어야 겠다. I should make noodles.

너는 야채를 더 먹어야 겠다. You should eat more vegetables.

Although: -지만
-지만 is used as a postposition to mean "although." This expression is located at the end of the phrase to which it is attached, similar to -(으)니까 (because).

-지만 = ALTHOUGH

가지만... Although (i) go ...

먹지만... Although (i) eat ...

맛지만... Although (it is) delicious ...

잡지만... Although (it is) spicy ...

We can stretch these phrases by adding more content to create complete sentences. See the following examples of longer sentences using the above expressions.

내가 지금은 가지만, 빨리 올게요. Although (i) go now, I will come soon.

한국 사람들이 불고기를 많이 먹지만, 야채를 먹는 것도 중요하다. Although Koreans eat bulgogi a lot, eating vegetables is also important.

한국 음식이 맛있다지만, 미국 음식도 맛있다. Although Korean food is delicious, American food is also delicious.

멕시코 음식이 맛지 않지만, 한국 음식은 더 맛다. Although Mexican food is spicy, Korean food is spicier.
14G. READING

The following is a sample menu from a Korean restaurant. Circle the names of the foods that you know and pronounce them out loud.

식당 메뉴
불고기 5,000원
탕수육 13,000원
짜장면 4,500원
짬뽕 4,500원
막류기 2,500원
김밥 2,000원
참게 4,000원
튀김 3,000원
우동 3,000원

Lunch Menu
Bulgogi 5,000 won
Tangsuyuk 13,000 won
Jajangmyeon 4,500 won
Jambbong 4,500 won
Ddeokbokki 2,500 won
Gimbap 2,000 won
Japchae 4,000 won
Tteokgim 3,000 won
Udon 3,000 won

14H. CULTURE TOPIC 2

Spicy Korean Food

Much of Korean food is based on combinations of seasonings and dried red pepper. Many popular Korean dishes, including the national dish, Kimchi (김치)—a spicy fermented napa cabbage preserve—include dried red pepper or a pepper paste in their list of ingredients. Other spicy ingredients are spicy bean paste, spicy seafood preserve, and spicy vegetable pickles. For a more refined taste, Koreans often add sesame seed oil for a deeper flavor, as well as other ingredients, such as honey, garlic, sesame seeds, soy sauce, and ginger, for a variety of palatal plea-
sures. Still, dried red pepper is the major ingredient in Korean cuisine. This is distinctive from Western cooking methods, where salt and pepper or butter are commonly used in cooking. Koreans do not use butter; rather, they use vegetable oils and salt. The dried red pepper is known to have been brought to Korea from Japan and China in medieval times, but the actual route remains unclear. The popularity of Korean food has recently begun to spread in the United States, primarily in major cities such as New York City, L.A., and San Francisco. It is typical for a Korean meal to be prepared with at least three to five side dishes and the chef’s choice of the day, separate from the main course. Some common side dishes include sweet fish cakes, cucumber salad, sweet and sour seaweed, or various stir-fried vegetables. Sticky rice and soup are often seen accompanying a Korean meal as well.

EXERCISES

A. Choose the best word from the list to complete the dialogue below.

여야 겠어요 좋겠네요 고 싶어요 어때요
살이 췌어서

A: 오늘은 쉬 먹 1 ?
B: 여야는 해물파전을 먹었으니 오늘은 고기를 먹겠어요.
A: 저는 좀 다른 걸 먹 2 .
B: 튀김은 3 ?
A: 튀김은 4 안 돼요. 여야를 좀 먹어야겠어요.
B: 그림 비빔밥은 어때요?
A: 아, 그래 5 !

B. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate particle.

1. 여야는 비빔밥( ) 먹었어요.
2. 쉬( ) 좋을까요?
3. 불고기( ) 맛지 않지요?
4. 여야 한국 사람들( ) 매운 음식은 잘 못 먹어요.
5. 그런데 여야는 저( ) 매운 음식이 더 맛있어요!

C. Complete the sentences with the given verbs. Use verb + -여/어 있다.

먹다 → 먹어요 엎다

1. 가다 → 2. 오다 →
D. Translate the given sentences into Korean.

1. What would be good?
2. Then, how about this vegetable rice bowl?
3. Although I like spicy food, Korean food is really spicy!
4. The spiciest food in the U.S. was Mexican food.
5. Maybe, seafood-pancake for you?

**ANSWER KEY**

**Comprehension Practice**

1. d) 비빔밥 2. b) 한국 음식이 매워요
3. c) 삶이찌니까 4. "Delicious" is “맛있는.”
5. “Noodles” are “국수.”

**Exercises**

A. 1. 고 싶어요 2. 어려 보이요 3. 어때요 4. 삶이 까서
5. 좋겠어요

B. 1. 응 2. 가 3. 가 4. 은 5. 도

C. 1. 가아니다 2. 와야 겠다 3. 좋아요 겠다 4. 공부해야 겠다.
5. 말씀드리아 겠다.

D. 1. 왜가 좋을까요?
2. 그럼 이 야채 비빔밥은 어때요?
3. 매운 음식을 좋아하지만, 한국 음식은 너무 매워요!
4. 미국에서 제일 매운 음식은 멕시코 음식이었어요.
5. 혹시 해물 파전은 어때요?

**INDEPENDENT CHALLENGE**

We’re sure you’ve built up quite the appetite from this lesson. To reward yourself, go to your local Korean restaurant to try a couple of dishes. Or, use the following recipe to create your own Korean meal.

**Bibimbap**

**Ingredients**

(1 serving)

1 cup cooked rice

1 oz (30 g) beef

1 oz (30 g) each radish, carrot, spinach, soybean sprouts, fiddlehead, cooked and seasoned with vegetable oil and salt

1 egg

Vegetable oil

**Marinade**

1/2 t soy sauce

2/3 t sesame oil

1/4 t sugar

1/4 t cooking wine

**Instructions**

1. Cut beef into strips and marinate 5 minutes in marinade. In hot oil, cook beef strips briefly; set aside. Place hot cooked rice in serving bowl.

2. Arrange 4 kinds of seasoned vegetable on rice. Place beef in the center.

3. Heat vegetable oil in a skillet to fry the egg, sunny-side up.

4. Place the fried egg on top of the beef. Serve with Kochujang (sweet and hot bean-paste sauce) and sesame oil in a sauce dish. Mix everything when eating.

You can find more recipes at the following website:


Try to cook one of these Korean dishes with your family for dinner, and write down how you and your family appreciate the taste of Korean cuisine, using the adjectives you learned in this lesson!
In this lesson, you will learn how to talk about the various sports that Koreans enjoy. You will also learn the confirming expression -지오, another causal expression, -아/어서, and reported speech using - 대오. Let's get started with some new vocabulary!

15A. VOCABULARY WARM-UP

축구 경기  
soccer match

붉은 악마  
Red Devils (Korean national soccer team nickname)

인기가 없대요.  
I heard that it is not popular.

크리스가 그러는데요...  
Chris said that ...  

무슨 운동을 좋아한대요?  
What kind of sports do they like? (lit., did you hear what sports they like?)

미식 축구  
American football

농구  
basketball

15B. DIALOGUE

Minho and Eunji are on their way to the soccer stadium. They are heading there to watch a national soccer match between Korea and China.

민호: 은지씨, 지난 번 축구 경기 너무 재미있었지요?

은지: 네, 저는 “붉은 악마” 서츠를 입고 경기를 봤어요.

민호: 2002년 월드컵 이후로 축구 팬들이 많이 늘었어요.

은지: 한국 사람들이 축구를 통해서 더 단결을
Comprehension Practice

Answer the following questions based on the dialogue.

1. Where are they going?
   a) 복은 악마 b) 축구장 c) 시장

2. Which sports are not popular with Americans, according to Eunji and Minho?
   a) 야구 b) 농구 c) 축구

3. What does Eunji say is the effect of the soccer match on Koreans?
   a) 인기 b) 단결 c) 재미

4. "축구" is ________.
5. "야구" is ________.

15C. VOCABULARY

축구  
game, match

경기  
... isn't it? ... doesn't it?  
(tag question)

볼은 악마  
Red Devils

서초  
shirt
to wear

입다  
World Cup

월드컵  
after

이후로  
fan
to be expanded, to grow

팬  
through

늘리다  
unity
to be united

통해서  
popularity
to be popular

단결  
I heard that ... (reported speech)

단결하다  
Right. (agreement)

인기  
I heard (someone) said ...

인기가 있다  
American football

- 대요

맞아요

그러는데

미식 축구

Minho: Eunji, wasn’t it fun, the last soccer match?
Eunji: Yes, I watched the match with my “Red Devils” shirt on.

Minho: There were a lot more soccer fans after the 2002 World Cup.
Eunji: Koreans seem to be united more through the soccer match.

Minho: By the way, I heard that soccer is not popular in the U.S.
Eunji: Right, I heard from Chris that soccer is really not popular in the U.S.

Minho: Then what games do Americans like (did you hear)?
Eunji: They like American football, baseball, basketball, hockey, etc. Koreans like soccer the best!

Minho: I see ... Oh, I can see the entrance of the field there. There are many people, aren’t there?
Eunji: It’s going to be fun today (also)!
Minho: Shall we buy some drinks?
Eunji: Of course!
15D. KEY PHRASES

Here are some terms used frequently by Koreans when talking about sports.

축구  
프로 축구  
야구  
농구  
배구  
하키  
수영  
스키  
테니스  
경기에서 지다  
경기에서 이기다  
경기에서 대패하다  
우승하다  
싸우다

Because colors are important in distinguishing different sports teams, let's learn some basic colors as well.

북은/빨간  
하얀/흰  
검은/까만  
노란  
파란/푸른  
주황

15E. CULTURE TOPIC 1

Sports are extremely popular in Korea. While soccer (축구) is certainly the most popular sport, especially after Korea and Japan hosted the 2002 World Cup Championships, Koreans enjoy other pastimes as well. The national martial art is 태권도 (Tae Kwon Do), which is still a popular sport exercised throughout the nation and overseas. Nowadays Koreans also enjoy baseball and basketball, and have professional leagues for both sports. Some Korean players are recruited by the MLB or the NBA in the United States.

If you ever have the chance to attend a sporting match in Korea, you can keep these two chants in mind: 대-한-민국! (lit., Great-Korean-nation!) and 이겨라! (Victory!). You'll probably hear them a lot, as Koreans are huge sports fans and big supporters of their national teams.

15F. GRAMMAR

Tag Question: Confirming - 지요

The ending -지 요 functions the same as a tag question in English ("... doesn't it?" "... aren't they?" or "... don't you?" etc.). These tag questions are used when you'd like to confirm some facts, events, or situations that you are describing or discussing. -지 요 functions the same way and creates more friendly environment, showing the person's willingness to cooperate and participate in the conversation. This ending can be combined with different tenses.

TAG QUESTION = VERB + -지 요?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tag Question</th>
<th>English Equivalent</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>학교에 가지요?</td>
<td>You go to school, don't you?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>학교에 갈 지요?</td>
<td>You went to school, didn't you?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>학교에 가고 있 지요?</td>
<td>You are going to school, aren't you?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>학교에 갈 가지요?</td>
<td>You will go to school, won't you?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The tense indicators precede the -지 요 ending, and no other grammatical ending is needed. The non-polite expression is formed by removing the polite ending particle -요.
NON-POLITE ENDING - 지

점심 먹었지?  You ate lunch, didn't you?
점심 먹지?  You are eating lunch, aren't you?
점심 음을거리지?  You will eat lunch, won't you?

The -지 or -지요 ending is a very useful and commonly used expression engaging and inviting the listener to take part in the conversation.

For/Because: Causal Expression - 아/어서
- 아/어서 is another causal expression similar to the one we saw in Lesson 14, -(으)니까. There is not much difference between these two expressions, only that the form - 아/어서 is similar to the English “for” and is shorter and simpler, as opposed to the stronger causal expression -(으)니까. Remember the order of causal phrases: the “because” phrase precedes the “result” phrase.

- 아/어서 = CAUSAL EXPRESSION “FOR / BECAUSE . . .”

| 크리스는 바빠다. 크리스는 못 왔다. | Chris was busy. He couldn't come. |
| 크리스는 바빠서 못왔어요. | Chris couldn't come because he was busy. |
| 아파요. 못 가요. | I am sick. I cannot go. |
| 아파서 못 가요. | Because I am sick, I cannot go. |
| 볼고기가 맛있어요. 볼고기를 더 먹었어요. | The bulgogi was delicious. I ate more bulgogi. |
| 볼고기가 맛있어서 더 먹었어요. | Because the bulgogi was delicious, I ate more. |
| 축구가 재미있어요. 또 왔어요. | The soccer game is fun. I came here again. |
| 축구가 재미있어서 또 왔어요. | Because the soccer game is fun, I came here again. |

Remember the form -(으)니까? The following examples show how two phrases are combined to form a causal expression using -(으)니까.

CAUSAL ENDING -(으)니까

| 크리스는 바빠다. 크리스는 못 왔다. | Chris was busy. He couldn't come. |
| 크리스는 바빠서 못왔어요. | Chris couldn't come because he was busy. |
| 저는 한국 음식이 좋아요. 저는 한국 음식을 자주 요리해요. | I like Korean food. I cook Korean food often. |
| 저는 한국 음식이 좋아서 자주 요리해요. | Because I like Korean foods, I cook them often. |

 Reported Speech - 대요/- 데요
- 데요/- 데요 대요 is attached to the end of a sentence to express the concept “I heard that . . .” This is called “reported speech” because you are reporting news or someone else’s words to the listener.

| 민지가 축구장에 갔대요. | I heard that Minji went to the soccer field. |
| 크리스가 회사에 늦었대요. | I heard that Chris was late to work. |
| 한국에서는 축구가 제일 인기가 많대요. | I heard that the soccer is the most popular sport in Korea. |
| 한국 음식 중에서 볼고기가 맛있대요. | I heard that among Korean foods, bulgogi is delicious. |

To Like: 좋아하다

The verb 좋아하다 is used in Korean to express “to like.” It is used and conjugated like any other verb in Korean. Take a look at the following examples.

| 미국에서는 무슨 운동을 좋아한다고? | What sports do Americans like (do you hear)? |
| 저는 야구를 안 좋아해요. | I don’t like baseball. |
| 그는 축구를 좋아해요. | He likes soccer. |
The following is a mock newspaper article about a World Cup soccer match. Circle the expressions that you recognize.

한국인들의 월드컵 축구에 관한 열정은 드릅니다. 지난 27일
서울 시청 공원 앞에 2만 명의 축구팬이 모였습니다. 이 날
한국인들은 독일과 한국 전에 단결된 응원력을 보여주었습니다.
이 응원을 통해 한국인들은 전 세계에 드러난 한국 축구 사랑의
의지를 보여 주었습니다. 한국인들은 현재 단결을 잘 하는
만족입니다. 한국인처럼 전 국민이 실제로 하나로 단결된 모습을
세계에 보여 준 경우는 드릅니다.

The Korean passion for World Cup soccer is heated. On the past 27th,
twenty thousands of soccer fans got together in front of the Si Cheong
Park. On this day, Koreans showed their united power in cheering for
the Germany vs. Korea match. Through this cheer session, Koreans
showed their will to love Korean soccer. Koreans by nature are easily
united. It is rare to find a case where all citizens of a nation actually
got united as the Koreans did.

NEW VOCABULARY

passion/enthusiasm
is heated
twenty thousand
got together
united
power of cheering
shown
cheer
through
hot
love
will, volition
originally
ethnicity
as
citizens of the nation
actually

15H. CULTURE TOPIC 2

Soccer is traditionally the favorite sport of Koreans. The Korean soccer
craze heated up in particular when the 2002 World Cup took place in
Korea and Japan. The one thing that would've struck any visitor to Korea
at the time was the ubiquitousness of the color red. Red signifies Korean
ethnicity, along with blue, as you can see in the red and blue combina-
tion yin-yang sign on the Korean flag. Korean soccer fans wore red shirts
with the logo 풍은 익막 (“Red Devils,” the nickname of the Korean
national team) to all the matches, so at one point the Korean section of the
crowd in the stadium was completely red. “Be the Reds!” T-shirts were
selling at a street price of USD $6.50 throughout the whole series. Nearly
everyone you encountered on the street in Korea at the time was wear-
ing red. This craze spread from the service desk employees at the Asiana
Airlines check-in to businesspeople parading around with their families
in sport-utility vehicles. Even Buddhist monks and grandparents on the
sidewalks were wearing these shirts to show their support for Korea
in the World Cup. The second most popular sport in Korea is probably
baseball. Many Koreans go to pro-baseball season games to spend their
weekend leisure time with friends and family. As more professional Ko-
rean golfers have gained a name in the worldwide pro golf champi-
nships, there is a growing golf craze in Korea as well.

EXERCISES

A. Choose the best word from the list to complete the dialogue below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>늦었어요</th>
<th>월드컵</th>
<th>미식 축구</th>
<th>인기</th>
<th>그럴구나</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

A: 저는 늦은 악마 서초가 두 개 있어요!
B: 왜, 한국에서는 2002년 1 이후로 축구
팬이 많이 늘어있지요?
A: 많이 2 그 때 정말 재미있었어요.
B: 그런데 미국에서는 축구가 인기가 없지 않죠?
A: 네, 미국 사람들이 축구를 안 보고 3 를
보지요.
B: 미식 축구가 미국에서 가장 4 가 있어요?
A: 네. 그리고 야구나 농구도 인기가 아주 많아요.
B: 5
B. Complete the sentence with the best verbs chosen from the list below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>왔어요</th>
<th>것 갈아요</th>
<th>많은데요</th>
<th>살까요</th>
<th>좋아해요</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
1. 어제 TV에서 한국과 중국 축구를 _____________.
2. 저는 한국 사람이나 빵 구를 제일 _____________.
3. 여기 축구장에 사람들이 정밀 _____________.
4. 한국 사람들이 축구를 통해서 단결을 하는 _____________.
5. 여기에서 음료수를 좀 _____________.

C. Change the following sentences to reported speech.

지난 번 축구가 재미있었어요 → 지난 번 축구가 재미있었네요.

1. 미국에서는 축구가 인기가 없어요.
→ 
2. 한국 사람들이 축구를 제일 좋아해요.
→ 
3. 축구장 입구가 보인다.
→ 
4. 월드컵 이후로 축구 팬들이 많이 늘었어요.
→ 
5. 음료수를 다섯 병 삽다.
→ 

D. Translate the following sentences into Korean.
1. I heard that Koreans like soccer a lot.
→ 
2. Right. By the way, shall we buy some drinks?
→ 
3. I watched the game with a "Red Devils" shirt on.
→ 
4. Soccer is not popular in the United States.
→ 
5. Of course!
→
INDEPENDENT CHALLENGE

For your last journal entry for this course, write about your favorite sports, incorporating the contents of this lesson. Describe (1) why you like the sports and (2) the experience of going to an actual game or match. Write on these two topics in three sentences each, and then write about your opinion on American pastime sporting events. Report some major sporting events that took place this year as well to finish your essay. Use the grammar patterns that you learned in this lesson—such as ‘-데요,’ ‘-여/어서,’ and ‘-지요’—as well as other forms that you learned from previous lessons. You can keep up these journal entries even once you’ve finished the course; the more practice you give your Korean, the more likely you are to become fluent!

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>time</th>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Korean</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 o'clock</td>
<td>한 시</td>
<td>again</td>
<td>다시</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 o'clock</td>
<td>열 시</td>
<td>age</td>
<td>-살 (counter)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 o'clock</td>
<td>열 한 시</td>
<td>airline</td>
<td>항공</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12 o'clock</td>
<td>열 두 시</td>
<td>airplane</td>
<td>비행기</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 o'clock</td>
<td>두 시</td>
<td>airport waiting room</td>
<td>공항 대기실</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 o'clock</td>
<td>세 시</td>
<td>also</td>
<td>-도 (post.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 o'clock</td>
<td>네 시</td>
<td>although</td>
<td>-지만</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 o'clock</td>
<td>다섯 시</td>
<td>among</td>
<td>-중</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 o'clock</td>
<td>여섯 시</td>
<td>and</td>
<td>-하고 (between nouns)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 o'clock</td>
<td>일곱 시</td>
<td>animal</td>
<td>짐승, -마리 (counter)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 o'clock</td>
<td>여덟 시</td>
<td>any</td>
<td>아무 (used in negative expression)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 o'clock</td>
<td>아홉 시</td>
<td>April</td>
<td>사월</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a bit, a little</td>
<td>좀</td>
<td>archaeology</td>
<td>고고학</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a lot of</td>
<td>많이요 (많-)</td>
<td>arm</td>
<td>팔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a.m.</td>
<td>오전</td>
<td>about ‘-품 (amount)’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>about</td>
<td>-품 (amount)</td>
<td>absolute rest</td>
<td>절대 안정</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>account</td>
<td>통장</td>
<td>account</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>actually</td>
<td>실은</td>
<td>actually</td>
<td>실은</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>address</td>
<td>주소</td>
<td>address</td>
<td>주소</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>after</td>
<td>이후로</td>
<td>after</td>
<td>이후로</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>afternoon</td>
<td>오후</td>
<td>afternoon</td>
<td>오후</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English</td>
<td>Korean</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>back</td>
<td>헛리</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bad, become</td>
<td>나빠지다 (v)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bad-looking, be</td>
<td>못생겼어요 (v)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>balcony</td>
<td>발코니</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bank</td>
<td>은행</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>baseball</td>
<td>야구</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>basketball</td>
<td>농구</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bathtub</td>
<td>욕조</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bathroom</td>
<td>화장실</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be</td>
<td>-있다 (있-) (v). -이다 (v)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be able to</td>
<td>-ㄹ 수 있-</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be how</td>
<td>어떻다 (v)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>because</td>
<td>-(으)니까</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>become</td>
<td>되-</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bed</td>
<td>침대</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bedroom</td>
<td>침실, 방</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beef</td>
<td>소고기</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>best</td>
<td>가장, 제일</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bibimbap (rice bowl)</td>
<td>비빔밥</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>big thing</td>
<td>큰 것 (크-)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>biology</td>
<td>생물학</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>birthday</td>
<td>생일 (n. for younger people), 생신 (n. for hon. person)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bitter</td>
<td>쓰</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>black</td>
<td>검은, 까만</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>black-colored</td>
<td>검은 눈이에요 (v)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eyes, have</td>
<td>파란 눈이에요 (v)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blue</td>
<td>파란, 파란     (occasionally)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blue eyes, have</td>
<td>파란 눈이에요 (v)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blue pants</td>
<td>청바지</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boarding time</td>
<td>탑승시간</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boat</td>
<td>배</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bon voyage!</td>
<td>줄거운 여행하세요!</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bookshelf</td>
<td>책장</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bread</td>
<td>빵</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>breakfast</td>
<td>아침</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bring and take</td>
<td>가지고 가다 (가지고 가-) (v)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>broccoli</td>
<td>브로콜리</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brown</td>
<td>갈색</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brown-haired</td>
<td>갈색 머리</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>building</td>
<td>건물, 동 (noun counter)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bulgogi (Korean BBQ)</td>
<td>화장대</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bureau</td>
<td>화장대</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bus</td>
<td>버스</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bus station</td>
<td>버스 역</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bus stop</td>
<td>버스 정류장</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bus terminal</td>
<td>버스 터미널</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>busy, be</td>
<td>바쁘다 (바쁘-) (v)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>but</td>
<td>그런데 (change in topic)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>by means of</td>
<td>로</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>by the way</td>
<td>그런데</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>came</td>
<td>왔어요 (오-) (non-polite)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>carrot</td>
<td>당근</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chair</td>
<td>의자</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>charge of, be in</td>
<td>담당 (v)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>checking account</td>
<td>예금 통장</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chemistry</td>
<td>화학</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chest</td>
<td>가슴</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chicken</td>
<td>닭고기</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chief clerk</td>
<td>제장님</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>children</td>
<td>아이들</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chopsticks</td>
<td>척가락</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chubby</td>
<td>퉁퉁해요 (v)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>citizen's registration card</td>
<td>주민 등록증</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>city</td>
<td>시내</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>city hall station</td>
<td>시청역</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>classmate</td>
<td>동창</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clean</td>
<td>청소하다 (청하-) (v)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>defeated, be</td>
<td>completely</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clothes</td>
<td>옷, -별 (counter)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clothing store</td>
<td>옷가게</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coffee shop</td>
<td>커피숍</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cola</td>
<td>콜라</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>color</td>
<td>색깔</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come</td>
<td>오다 (오-) (v), 왜요 (오-)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come this way</td>
<td>이리 오세요</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>company</td>
<td>회사</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>compete</td>
<td>싸우다 (싸우-) (v)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>computer</td>
<td>컴퓨터 공학</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>engineering</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>consult</td>
<td>상담하다 (상담하-) (v)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cook</td>
<td>요리해요, 요리하다 (요리하-) (v)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cousin</td>
<td>사촌 (father's side), 외사촌 (mother's side)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cousins</td>
<td>사촌들</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cruise</td>
<td>유람 (선)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cup</td>
<td>컵, -잔 (counter)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>currently</td>
<td>현재</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>customs</td>
<td>세관</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dance class</td>
<td>댄스 수업</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>date</td>
<td>데이트</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>day</td>
<td>일, 하루, 날</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>December</td>
<td>심이월</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>defeated, be completely</td>
<td>(경기에서도) 대패하다 (v)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clothes</td>
<td>옷, -별 (counter)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clothing store</td>
<td>옷가게</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>delicious</td>
<td>맛있는, 맛좋은</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>delicious, although (it is)</td>
<td>맛있지만</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>delivery</td>
<td>배달</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>depart</td>
<td>출발하다 (출발하-) (v)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>department head</td>
<td>부부장</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>company</td>
<td>회사</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>compete</td>
<td>싸우다 (싸우-) (v)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>computer</td>
<td>컴퓨터 공학</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>engineering</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>consult</td>
<td>상담하다 (상담하-) (v)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cook</td>
<td>요리해요, 요리하다 (요리하-) (v)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cousin</td>
<td>사촌 (father's side), 외사촌 (mother's side)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cousins</td>
<td>사촌들</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cruise</td>
<td>유람 (선)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cup</td>
<td>컵, -잔 (counter)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>currently</td>
<td>현재</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>customs</td>
<td>세관</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dance class</td>
<td>댄스 수업</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>date</td>
<td>데이트</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>day</td>
<td>일, 하루, 날</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>December</td>
<td>심이월</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>defeated, be completely</td>
<td>(경기에서도) 대패하다 (v)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clothes</td>
<td>옷, -별 (counter)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clothing store</td>
<td>옷가게</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>delicious</td>
<td>맛있는, 맛좋은</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>delicious, although (it is)</td>
<td>맛있지만</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>delivery</td>
<td>배달</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>depart</td>
<td>출발하다 (출발하-) (v)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>department head</td>
<td>부부장</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>company</td>
<td>회사</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>compete</td>
<td>싸우다 (싸우-) (v)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>computer</td>
<td>컴퓨터 공학</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>engineering</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
difficult, be 어려다 (어려-) (v)
difficult, become 어려워지다 (v)
diligently 열심히
dinner 저녁
dining table 식탁
dish 그릇, -그릇 (counter)
do 하다 (하다-) (v)
Do you speak English? 영어를 하세요?
Do you speak Korean? 한국어 하세요?
do/does 해요 (하-)
doctor 의사 선생님
document 서류
doesn’t it -지요? (tag question)
doing 하세요 (하-)
don’t 하지 마세요 (negative command marker)
downtown 시내
drink 마시다 (마시-) (v)
drinks 음료수
driver’s license 운전 면허증
during -간
during weekdays 주중에
each -번씩 (used with a number)
ear 귀
early 일찍
eat 먹다 (먹-) (v), 먹어-, 밥 먹어요 (meals)
eglect 계란, 달걀
eight 여덟 (K-K number), 함 (S-K number)
eight thirty 여덟시 반
electronics engineering 전자공학
eleven 열일나 (K-K number), 십일 (S-K number)
fail 패스
ferry 여객선
fever 열
fifty 십 (K-K number), 오십 (S-K number)
first of all 우선
first time 처음
fish 생선
fit 어울리다 (v)
fit well 잘 어울려요 (어울리-) (v)
five 다섯 (K-K number), 오 (S-K number)
fix 고치다 (v)
flat 낮디한
flight 비행기
flower shop 꽃가게
follow 따라오다 (따라오-) (v)
food 음식
food poisoning 식중독
foot 발
football 미식 축구
forget 잊혀하다 (잡혀하다-) (v)
fork 포크
forty 마흔 (K-K number), 사십 (S-K number)
four 넷 (K-K number), 사 (S-K number)
fourteen 열넷 (K-K number), 십사 (S-K number)
French literature 불문학
fresh 신선한
Friday 금요일
from -부터, 에서요
from where 어디서
front gate 정문
funny, become 재미있어지다 (재미있어지-) (v)
furniture 가구
G
game 경기
garment 셔츠, -별 (counter)
generate 나다 (나-) (v)
get better 좋아지다 (좋아지-) (v)
flight 비행기
get on 타다 (타-) (v)
get rid of 없애다 (없애-) (v)
get up 일어나요
gift 선물
give 주다 (주-) (v), 드리다 (to someone else) (v)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Glass</th>
<th>-전 (counter)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Go</td>
<td>가다 (가-) (v), 자다 (자-) (v)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Go grocery shopping</td>
<td>시장바요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Go home</td>
<td>집에 가요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Go to the bank</td>
<td>은행에 가요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Go to class</td>
<td>수업에 가요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Go well (clothes)</td>
<td>어울려요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Good</td>
<td>좋, 좋은</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Good, be</td>
<td>좋다 ( 좋다-) (v)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Good, become</td>
<td>좋아지다 (좋아지-) (v)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Good-bye</td>
<td>안녕히 가십시오! (fml/polite), 조심해서 가세요! (infml/polite), 잘 가! (non polite), 안녕히 가세요! (infml/polite)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Good-looking</td>
<td>잘 생겼어요 (compliment about a man)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gradually</td>
<td>살살</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Graduate school life</td>
<td>대학원 생활</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grandfather</td>
<td>할아버지, 외할아버지 (mother's side)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grandmother</td>
<td>할머니, 외할머니 (mother's side)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Green</td>
<td>파란, 푸른 (occasionally)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Green onion</td>
<td>파</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>손</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hand</td>
<td>입 (입-) (v)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Have</td>
<td>있다 (있-) (v)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Have to (do something)</td>
<td>해야 되요 (v)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He</td>
<td>그 (non-polite), 그분 (polite)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Head</td>
<td>머리</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Headache</td>
<td>두통</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hear</td>
<td>들었어요 (들-) (v), 듣다 (들-) (v)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heart</td>
<td>심장</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hello</td>
<td>여보세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Her</td>
<td>그(녀)의, 그 분의 (polite/hon.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Here</td>
<td>여기</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Here, be</td>
<td>여기에요 (v)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hi</td>
<td>안녕 (infml/non polite)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>History</td>
<td>역사학</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hockey</td>
<td>하키</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Homework</td>
<td>숙제</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hospital</td>
<td>병원</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hot</td>
<td>매운 (spicy)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hotel</td>
<td>호텔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>House</td>
<td>집, -채 (counter)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How are you?</td>
<td>안녕하십니까? (fml/polite), 안녕하세요? (infml/polite)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How is/are...?</td>
<td>어떻게요?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How much</td>
<td>얼마나</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>나 (non-polite), 저 (polite)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I don't mind</td>
<td>편찮아요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In a full-taste</td>
<td>풍미있는</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In fact</td>
<td>실은</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Information desk</td>
<td>안내소</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Information science</td>
<td>정보과학</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intend to fix</td>
<td>고쳐 보다 (고치-) (v)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interesting, be</td>
<td>재미있다 (재미있-) (v)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Invite</td>
<td>초대하다 (초대하-) (v)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Island</td>
<td>-도</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isn't it?</td>
<td>-지요? (tag question)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It seems...</td>
<td>같은데요 (같-)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It's all right.</td>
<td>편찮아요.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It's nothing.</td>
<td>별 거 아니에요.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It's okay.</td>
<td>편찮아. (non-pol.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>J</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jade</td>
<td>옥색</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>January</td>
<td>일월</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jeans</td>
<td>청바지</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jog</td>
<td>조깅하다 (조깅하-) (v)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>July</td>
<td>침월</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>June</td>
<td>유월</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kitchen</td>
<td>부엌</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Knife</td>
<td>칼, 나이프</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Know</td>
<td>알겠습니까 (fml/polite), 알았어요 (infml/polite), (알-) (v)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Korean</td>
<td>한국어</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Korean literature</td>
<td>국문학</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory</td>
<td>연구실</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Large build, have</td>
<td>넘어서다 (넘어서-) (v)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Large, become</td>
<td>넘어진다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last</td>
<td>마지막, 지난</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last night</td>
<td>어제 밤</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Late, be</td>
<td>늦다 (늦-) (v)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lately</td>
<td>요즘</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Learn</td>
<td>배우다 (배우-) (v)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Learned</td>
<td>배웠어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leave</td>
<td>떠나다 (떠나-) (v)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Left</td>
<td>왼쪽</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leg</td>
<td>다리</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Let it (them) be</td>
<td>그날 두다 (v)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Library</td>
<td>도서관</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lifestyle</td>
<td>생활</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Listen</td>
<td>듣다 (들-) (v)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Living room</td>
<td>거실</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Long hair, have</td>
<td>머리가 길어요 (v)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Look</td>
<td>보다 (보-) (v)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Glossary**
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Korean</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>look good</td>
<td>좋아 보다 (좋아 보-  (v))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lose the game</td>
<td>경기에서 지다 (경기에서 지-) (v)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lower stomach</td>
<td>아랫배</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lunch</td>
<td>점심</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lunchtime</td>
<td>점심</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>major</td>
<td>전공</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make a phone call</td>
<td>전화를 걸어 (결-) (non-polite)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make deliveries</td>
<td>배달을 해요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>March</td>
<td>산월</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>market</td>
<td>시장</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>match</td>
<td>경기</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maternal side relatives</td>
<td>외- (affix)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mathematics</td>
<td>수학</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>May</td>
<td>오월</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>may be</td>
<td>혹시</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meat</td>
<td>고기</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>medical insurance card</td>
<td>의료 보험증</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>medical studies</td>
<td>의학</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>medicine</td>
<td>약</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>medium build</td>
<td>보통 제격이에요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meet</td>
<td>뵐다 (드립니다- (v))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meet a friend</td>
<td>친구를 만나요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mexico</td>
<td>멕시코</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>milk</td>
<td>우유</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monday</td>
<td>필요일</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>month</td>
<td>월, -달 (duration of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>more</td>
<td>더</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>morning</td>
<td>아침</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>most</td>
<td>가장, 제일</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mother</td>
<td>어머니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mother’s sister</td>
<td>이모</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mother’s sister’s</td>
<td>이모부</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>husband</td>
<td>(polite)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>movie theater</td>
<td>영화관</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mr.</td>
<td>-씨, 선생님</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mrs.</td>
<td>-씨, 사모님</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ms.</td>
<td>-씨</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>music</td>
<td>음악</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>my</td>
<td>나의 (non-polite), 내 (non-polite), 저의 (polite), 제 (polite)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>성함</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>napkin</td>
<td>냅킨</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>need</td>
<td>필요 하다 (필요하다-) (v)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>new recruit</td>
<td>신입사원</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>newsstand</td>
<td>가판대</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>next</td>
<td>열</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nice</td>
<td>좋-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>night</td>
<td>밤</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nine</td>
<td>아홉 (K-K number), 구 (S-K number)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>non-polite ending</td>
<td>给予 (duration of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>non-polite</td>
<td>이지</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>non-polite ending</td>
<td>给予 (duration of)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**November**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Korean</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>non-smoking area</td>
<td>금연 구역</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noodles</td>
<td>국수</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>not</td>
<td>안</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>not at all</td>
<td>아니요, 전반에요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>November</td>
<td>심일월</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>over there</td>
<td>저기</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**October**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Korean</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>October</td>
<td>시월</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of course</td>
<td>물론이-, 물론이죠!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>office</td>
<td>사무실</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oh, well...</td>
<td>글쎄요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Okay.</td>
<td>좋아요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>older aunt</td>
<td>큰머니 (father’s older brother’s wife)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>older brother</td>
<td>오빠 (f. speaker), 형 (m. speaker), 오형 (m. speaker)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>older brother’s wife</td>
<td>올케 언니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>older sister</td>
<td>언니 (f. speaker), 누나 (m. speaker)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>older uncle</td>
<td>큰아버지 (father’s older brother)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on the right</td>
<td>오른쪽에</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>one</td>
<td>하나 (K-K number), 일 (S-K number)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>one hundred</td>
<td>백</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>one thousand</td>
<td>천</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>one-way ticket</td>
<td>편도표</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>onion</td>
<td>양파</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Glossary**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Korean</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pair</td>
<td>한 벌 (noun counter for clothes)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pants</td>
<td>바지</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>passport</td>
<td>여권</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>past</td>
<td>지난</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paternal side relatives</td>
<td>천 (affix)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pencils</td>
<td>연필, -자루 (counter)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>people</td>
<td>사람들, -사람/-명 (counter), -분 (counter, hon.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>person</td>
<td>사람, -사람/-명 (counter), -분 (counter, hon.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>petit, be</td>
<td>왜소해요 (v)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phone number</td>
<td>전화번호</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pink</td>
<td>핑크</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plan</td>
<td>계획</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plane ticket</td>
<td>비행기표</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>play</td>
<td>놀다 (놀-) (v)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>polite formal ending</td>
<td>-습니 다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>one hundred</td>
<td>백</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>one thousand</td>
<td>천</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>one-way ticket</td>
<td>편도표</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>polite formal ending</td>
<td>-습니까</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>onion</td>
<td>양파</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>question ending</td>
<td>_polite (polite)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>our</td>
<td>저희 (들) (의)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>our</td>
<td>우리 (들) (의)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
polite negative command - 지 마세요
polite positive command - 세요
polite short form ending - 루
popular, be 인기가 있- (v)
popularity 인기
pork 햄지고기
positive 좋-
possible, be 가능하다 (가능하-) (v)
possible, become 가능해지다 (v)
preparation 준비
pretty 예쁘고 (compliment about a woman)
pretty, be 예쁜 (예쁘-) (v)
price 가격, 값
program 프로그램
programmer 프로그래머
purple 보라색
remodel 리모델링하다 (리모델링하-) (v)
remodeling 리모델링
rental car 렌트카
replacement 교체
reservation 예약
reserve 예약하다 (예약하-) (v)
right attribute
right away 바로
room 방
rotten 썩은
round trip 항복
round-trip ticket 항복표
sale 세일
salty 짭짤한
same, be 같다 (v)
sashimi 회
Saturday 토요일
savings account 저금통장
savory 맛 좋은
saying 말씀
school 교과
science 과학, 학과
seafood scallion 해물파전
pancake 팬케이크
section chief 과장님
six 여섯 (K-K number), 육 (S-K number)
sixty 여섯 (K-K number), 육십 (S-K number)
See you again! 또 뵙요!
See you later! 다음에 또 컴퓨터!
send 보내다 (보내-) (v)
sent 보낸
September 구월
seven 일곱 (K-K number), 천 (S-K number)
severe headache 심한 두통
she 그(녀), 그분 (polite/hon.)
short 키가 작아요 (person's height)
short hair, have 머리가 짧아요 (v)
should (do something) -야 ought요 (v)
shower 샤워하다
sick, be (v) 아프다 (아프-)
sick, become 아파지다 (v)
since -(으)니
sing 노래하다 (노래하-) (v)
sister-in-law 올케, 아프다 (of brother's wife), (of husband's sister)
spicy, be 맵- (v)
spoon 숟가락
spoon
spinach 시금치
speak English 영어하다 (영어하-) (v)
speak
spend time 지내다 (지내-) (v)
spray
spicy
spicy, be 맵- (v)
spicy
spouses 부부, 내외분 (polite/hon.)
spring 봄
stale 신선하지 않은
started 시작했어요
stereo (audio) set 스테레오 (오디오) 장치
stomach 배
stomachache, have a 체하다 (체하-) (v)
storage 저장
strange, be 이상하다 (이상하다-) (v)
strange, become 이상해지다 (v)
stringy (고기가) 질긴
strongly-spiced 양념 맛이 강한
study 공부 (n), 공부하다 (v)
subject particle -이, 가
subway 지하철
suddenly 갑자기
suitcase 여행 가방
summer 여름
Sunday 일요일
sweet 달콤한
swimming 수영

teach 이
tell 말드리다 (말씀드리-), (v)
teller 은행원
tempura 튀김
ten 열 (K-K number), 십 (S-K number)
tender (고기) 연한
tennis 테니스
thank you 감사해요 (infl./polite), 고마워요 (infl/polite), 고마워 (non-polite, informal)

these days 요즘
they 그들 (non-polite), 그분들 (polite/hon.)
trip 여행
thing 것 (colloquial)
thirteen 열셋 (K-K number), 십삼 (S-K number)
this 이, 이것, 이거
this kind 이런 (종류)
this thing 이것은, 이거
thought 생각
through 통해서
Thursday 목요일
ticket 표, 승차권
ticket issuing desk 발권대

that 그, 그것, 그거
that over there 저거
that thing 그거, 그게 (colloquial)
that thing over there 저거
their 그(녀)들의, 그들의 (polite/hon.)

their selves 자기자신들 (non-polite), 그분들 자신들 (polite/hon.)
to -까지
to someone -에게 (literate form), -께 (polite/hon.

take and bring 가지고 가다 (가지고 가-), (v)
tall 키가 클다 (person's height)
tall person 키가 큰 사람

team leader 팀장
then 그런
there 거기, 저기
therefore 그래서
there is/there are 있어요

train 기차
train station 기차역

they 그들 (non-polite), 그분들 (polite/hon.)
trip 여행
thing 것 (colloquial)
thirteen 열셋 (K-K number), 십삼 (S-K number)

this 이, 이것, 이거
this kind 이런 (종류)
this thing 이것은, 이거
thought 생각
through 통해서
Thursday 목요일
ticket 표, 승차권
ticket issuing desk 발권대

that 그, 그것, 그거
that over there 저거
that thing 그거, 그게 (colloquial)
that thing over there 저거
their 그(녀)들의, 그들의 (polite/hon.)

their selves 자기자신들 (non-polite), 그분들 자신들 (polite/hon.)
to -까지
to someone -에게 (literate form), -께 (polite/hon.

take and bring 가지고 가다 (가지고 가-), (v)
tall 키가 클다 (person's height)
tall person 키가 큰 사람

team leader 팀장
then 그런
there 거기, 저기
therefore 그래서
there is/there are 있어요

train 기차
train station 기차역

they 그들 (non-polite), 그분들 (polite/hon.)
trip 여행
thing 것 (colloquial)
thirteen 열셋 (K-K number), 십삼 (S-K number)

this 이, 이것, 이거
this kind 이런 (종류)
this thing 이것은, 이거

thought 생각
through 통해서
Thursday 목요일
ticket 표, 승차권
ticket issuing desk 발권대

that 그, 그것, 그거
that over there 저거
that thing 그거, 그게 (colloquial)
that thing over there 저거
their 그(녀)들의, 그들의 (polite/hon.)

their selves 자기자신들 (non-polite), 그분들 자신들 (polite/hon.)
to -까지
to someone -에게 (literate form), -께 (polite/hon.

uncle | 큰아버지 (father's older brother), 삼촌 (unmarried, father's side)
update | 업데이트 (n), 업데이트하다 (업데이트하-) (v)
used to | -더니 (situation in the past)

v
vacation | 휴가
vacation, leave for a | 휴가내다 (휴가내-) (v)
vegetables | 야채
vegetarian | 채식주의자
very | 참
visa | 비자
volleyball | 배구

w
waist | 허리
wait | 기다리다 (기다리-) (v)
wait a second | 참간만요
water | 물
we | 저희(들) (polite), 우리(들) (non-polite)
wear | 입다 (입-) (v)
website | 웹사이트
website update | 웹사이트 업데이트
Wednesday | 수요일
week | 주
weekend | 주말
welcome | 어서 오세요
well | 그런데
well, do | 잘하다 (하-) (v)
well, not do | 못하다 (v)
well, speak | 잘하다 (하-) (v)
what | 뭐
What is...? | 뭐예요?
What time...? | 몇 시...?
when | 언제, -때
where | 어디, -곳
which | 무슨, 어느
white | 하얀, 흰
who | 누구
whole | 전체
why | 왜요
win the game | 경기에서 이기다 (경기에서 이기-) (v)

window | 창문
wire transfer | 송금
wire transfer document | 송금 내역서
won | 원 (Korean currency)
words | 말씀 (hon.)
work | 회사, 일, 일이 되다 (일이 되-) (v), 일하다 (일하-) (v)

y
yeah | 응 (non-polite)
year | 년
yellow | 노란
yes | 네
(yes) (positive answer, fml./polite)
yet | 아직도
you | 너 (sing., non-polite), 사모님 (sing, polite/hon.), 선생님 (sing, polite/hon.), 너희 (pl., non-polite), 여러분 (pl., fml./polite)
younger sibling | 동생
your | 너의 (sing., non-polite), 네 (sing., non-polite), 선생님의 (sing, polite/hon.), 너희(들)의 (pl., non-polite), 여러분의 (pl., polite)

z
zero | 공 (S-K number)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>가</td>
<td>subject particle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가 보다</td>
<td>try going (v.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가 보요...</td>
<td>Let's go and see ... (가-/보-)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가졌어요</td>
<td>going, I/we will be (polite/infl.m.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가격</td>
<td>price</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가고 있다</td>
<td>going, am/is/are</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가고 있습니다</td>
<td>going, am/is/are (polite/infl.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가고 있어요</td>
<td>going, am/is/are (polite/fml.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가고 있었습니까</td>
<td>going, was/were (polite/fml.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가고 있었어요</td>
<td>going, was/were (polite/infl.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가고 있을 거예요</td>
<td>going, he/she/they will be (polite/ inflm.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가구</td>
<td>furniture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가까운</td>
<td>Let's invite relatives and close friends. (non-polite)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>분들을 초대하다</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가능하다</td>
<td>possible, be (v.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가능해지다</td>
<td>possible, become (v.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가다 (가-)</td>
<td>go (v.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가레가 많이 나와요</td>
<td>I have phlegm. (polite)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가세요.</td>
<td>Please go. (polite/infl.m. command), Let's go. (polite/infl.m. suggestion)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가슴</td>
<td>chest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가야겠다.</td>
<td>(I) should go.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가요.</td>
<td>(I/We/You/She He/They) go/goes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가장</td>
<td>most, best</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가지 마세요.</td>
<td>Don't go.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가지고 가다</td>
<td>take and bring (v.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가지고 가다 (가지고 가-)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가지만</td>
<td>although (I) go</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>간판대</td>
<td>newsstand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-간</td>
<td>duration of time, during</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>간다!</td>
<td>(I/We/You/He She/They) go/goes (now)!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>갈색</td>
<td>brown</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
(She) is brown-haired.

She is brown-haired.

I caught a cold.

I caught a cold.

I defeated a game.

I won the game.

I lose the game.

I lose the game.

Case

Eggs

Here is your check.

Please calculate the total.

Chief clerk

Plan

Thank you.

Thank you.

Thank you.

Father's sister

Father's sister's husband

Intend to fix

Fix

Zero (S-K number)

Study

Study
The smell is so wonderful!

You should eat more vegetables.

That's too expensive.

your (sing, non-polite)

your (pl, non-polite)

become large (v)

enlarge (v)

yes (polite positive answer),

your (sing.)

4 o'clock

four (K-K number)

yellow

sing (v)

Do you have a notebook?

lunch!

refrigerator

you (sing, non-polite)

To (someone) (polite, honorific)

It's too much

Not good.

That's too expensive.

I really don't think it will work.

I can't be bothered.

I'm not interested.

Please call.

Who should I say called?

older sister (m. speaker)

dur (duration of speaker)

eye

did you have an eye infection?

topic particle

expanded, be (v)

late, be (v)

Don't be late.

since

because

I heard that...

representative

classmates

graduate school life

Korean Airlines

dance class

more

More delicious!

used to (in situation in the past)

(You) have large build.

date

(1) am dating.

also (post)

island, also

library

The arrival is delayed.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>도착하다</td>
<td>arrive (v)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>독감인 것 걸어요.</td>
<td>I seem to have a flu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>돌다 (돌-)</td>
<td>turn (v)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-동</td>
<td>building number (address of a building), number of building (counter)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>동생</td>
<td>younger sibling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>돼지고기</td>
<td>pork</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>되다 (되-)</td>
<td>become (v)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>두벌 주세요.</td>
<td>Give me two garments. (I’ll take two garments.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>두시</td>
<td>2 o’clock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>두통</td>
<td>headache</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>두통이 싶어요.</td>
<td>I have a severe headache.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>들</td>
<td>two (K-K number)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>드리다</td>
<td>give (to someone else) (v)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>드릴 (드리-)</td>
<td>will give (to someone)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>드릴선허나?</td>
<td>Did you eat? (polite/fml/hon.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>듣다 (들-)</td>
<td>listen (v), hear (v)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>들하다 (들-)</td>
<td>eat (v)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>들어와.</td>
<td>Come on in. (non-polite)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>들어오다 (들어오-)</td>
<td>enter (v)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>들었어요.</td>
<td>I heard it. etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>따라오다 (따라오-)</td>
<td>follow (v)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>많이 많이 하요.</td>
<td>I sweat too much.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>때</td>
<td>when, time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>빙큐.</td>
<td>Thank you. (colloquial; from English)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>떠나다 (떠나-)</td>
<td>leave (v)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>또 뵙어요!</td>
<td>See you again! (infrml/polite)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>뚱뚱해요..</td>
<td>He/She is chubby.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>뜨거운</td>
<td>hot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>뜨겁습니다.</td>
<td>It is hot.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-가 수 있을-</td>
<td>to be able to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>렌트카</td>
<td>rental car</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>로</td>
<td>by means of, as</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>리모델링하다 (리모델링하-)</td>
<td>remodeling remodel (v)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>맛 좋은</td>
<td>delicious, savory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>맛이 좀 쌩 것 같아요.</td>
<td>It tastes a little bit salty.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>맛있는</td>
<td>delicious</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>맛있지만</td>
<td>delicious, although (it is)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>맛겼는데요.</td>
<td>It may fit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>맞이요</td>
<td>it’s right (agreement)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>매년</td>
<td>every year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>매운</td>
<td>hot, spicy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>매운 (열-)</td>
<td>spicy, be (v), irregular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>매월</td>
<td>every month</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>매일</td>
<td>every day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>매일</td>
<td>every day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>매주</td>
<td>every week</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>맥락 (맥-)</td>
<td>spicy, be (v), irregular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>맥주</td>
<td>every day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>맥락안</td>
<td>Isn’t it spicy? (rhetorical question)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>머리</td>
<td>head</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>머리 긴분</td>
<td>person with long hair</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>머리가 길어요.</td>
<td>She has long hair.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>머리가 아지려워요.</td>
<td>I have dizziness.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>머리가 짧어요.</td>
<td>She has short hair.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>머리가 있다</td>
<td>eating, am/is/are</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>머리가 있다</td>
<td>I am eating (now)!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>머리가 보다</td>
<td>try eating (v)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>머리요</td>
<td>Please eat; I am eating.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>머지문</td>
<td>Although (I) eat...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>멋있어요!</td>
<td>You look cool!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>멋있어요!</td>
<td>You look cool!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>멋있어요!</td>
<td>You look cool!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>멋있어요!</td>
<td>You look cool!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>매시코</td>
<td>Mexico</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-연</td>
<td>if</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-명</td>
<td>person counter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>몇 번째</td>
<td>What number did you call?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>몇 번째 거셨어요?</td>
<td>What number did you call?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>몇 시...?</td>
<td>What time...?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>모든</td>
<td>all</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>모습</td>
<td>looks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>모였습니다. (Everyone) got together.</td>
<td>모였습니다. (Everyone) got together.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목요일</td>
<td>Thursday</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
 못생겼어요. (He/She) is bad-looking.

웃다
not well, do/be (v)

무료
free

무슨
which

무슨 운동을 좋아한대요?
What kind of sports do they like? (lit. did you hear what sports they like?)

물
water

물 마시지 마세요.
Don’t drink water.

물 좀 주세요.
Could you give me some water?

물리 이-
of course

물란 마시세요.
Drink only water.

물이 보다
ask (v)

뭐 하세요?
What are you doing? (polite/infml.)

뭐가 좋겠니?
What would be good? (non-polite)

뭐나...
What is...? (non-polite)

할 도와 드릴까요?
How can I help you?

미국
U.S.

미식 축구
American football

민족
ethnicity

명파한
flat

배우다
(배우-)

배웠어요.
(I learned.

백

백
one hundred (S-K number)

버스
bus

버스 정류장
bus stop

버스 터미널
bus station, bus terminal

-번석
each (used with a number)

-별
garment counter

별 거
It’s nothing.

별 말씀을요.
You don’t need to say that.

병원
hospital

보내다
send (v)

보낸
sent (adj.)

보다 (보-)
look (v)

보라
purple

보여주-었습니까.
(I have shown him). (polite/infml.)

보이-.
seen, looked, seemed

보이세요...
Can you see...? (polite/infml.)

보통
(He) is of medium build.

 bestselling

불가요? (보-)
Shall we see?

불쾌요. (보-)
I will take a look.

맙고 싶-
I’d like to see... (non-polite)

할 freight

할선 (발-)
see (v), meet (v)

받다 (발-)
be envious, jealous (v)

받다
(I’m) jealous!

받은
kitchen

받침
department head

받침
from

받침
(counter for persons

받침
pink

받침
bulgogi (Korean BBQ)

받침
French literature

받침
red

받침
Red Devils

받침
broccoli

받침
bibimbap (rice bowl mixed with other food contents)

받침
become expensive (v)

받침
visa

받침
airplane, flight

받침
When is the flight?

받침
The flight is delayed.

받침
plane ticket

받침
I reserved the ticket.

받침
red
십한 두통  severe headache
십  ten (S-K number)
십사  fourteen (S-K number)
십삼  thirteen (S-K number)
십이  twelve (S-K number)
십이월  December
십일  eleven (S-K number)
십일월  November
싸우다  to fight (v.), compete (v.)
싸우다 (싸우-)  to write (v.)
색은  rotten
쓰  bitter
-세  Mr., Mrs., Ms. (fmI/polite honorific)
아
아  non-polite familiar ending
-아 보다  try (doing something) (v.)
아니요  not at all
아랫배  lower stomach
아랫배가 살살 아파요.  My lower stomach is slowly getting upset.
아무  any (used in negative expression)
아버지  father
아시아나 항공  Asiana Airlines
안녕히 가십시오!  Good-bye! (polite/frmI)
안방을 좀 넓히고 약다 (약-)  sit (v)
일겠습니까 (일-)  I got you, know, see (v.) (polite frmI)
앞  in front of
야구  baseball
야채  vegetables
야채 비빔밥  vegetable bibimbap
약  medicine
약속  appointment
양념 맛이 강한  strongly-spiced
양파  onion
여아
여  non-polite familiar ending
-여 보-  try (doing something) (v.)
어느  which
여기  where
여기 가세요?  Where are you going? (polite/frmI)
여나데?  Where are you? (polite/infrml)
여나데?  Where are you sick? (What?)
여러서 ...  Where would be good to ...?
여려바  from where
어름다. (어름-)  difficult, become (v.)
어머니  mother
어서 오세요! Come on!, Welcome! (polite/infrml)
어서 와! Come on! (non-polite)
어서 왜?  should (do something) (v.)
어서 젊어요?  should (do something) (v.)
어서 되세요?  have to do something (v.)
어서 되세요?  have to do something (v.)
어서 되세요?  have to do something (v.)
어서 되세요?  have to do something (v.)
어서 서로요?  It goes well. (v., of clothes)
소리대로
어诱发 fit (v)
어제 yesterday
어제 밤 last night
어제 접속했어요 Did you connect to the Internet (chat room) yesterday?
아휴, 참! Arghh! (an exclamation for when you confront something absurd or outrageous)
언니 older sister (for a female speaker)
 언제 되요? When is it possible?
얼굴 face
좋아겠네! You look good! (lit. Your face is good.)
 얼마나 how much
 얼마나 드릴까요? How much would you like?
 얼마나 얼마에요? How much is this?
 업데이트 update
 업데이트하다 (업데이트하-) update (v.)
업체 business, company
없애다 get rid of (v.)
 여 to (someone)
여에게 to (someone) (literary form)
여서 from
에서 Excel (computer program)
엔진 engine
여 female
여객선 ferry
여권 passport
여기 here
여기 입녀요 (있-) Please sign here.
여기 입녀해. Here, greet (meet) my friend.
여기 입는다 (있-) Here you are.
여기 주소 좀 주세요. Please write your address here.
여기에요. Here I am.
여덟 eight (K-K number)
여덟 시 8 o'clock
여덟 시 반 eight thirty
여러 various
여러분 you (pl., polite)
여러분의 your (pl., polite)
여름 summer
여보세요 hello, Hello? (on the phone)
여섯 six (K-K number)
여섯 시 6 o'clock
여섯 시간마다 한번씩 쓰드세요. Take (this) every six hours.
음어를 하세요? Do you speak English? (polite/informal)
음어하다 (음어하-) speak English (v.)
영화 관 movie theater
영어학 history
영상실 laboratory
열 ten (K-K number); fever
열 두 시 12 o'clock
열 시 10 o'clock
열 한 시 11 o'clock
열넷 fourteen (K-K number)
열둘 twelve (K-K number)
열셋 thirteen (K-K number)
열심히 diligently
열이 많이 나오. I have a high fever.
열정 passion, enthusiasm
열하나 eleven (K-K number)
영문학 English literature
영어 English
영어 하네요? Do you speak English? (non-polite)
영어 하지만 늘러 있어요? Is there anybody who speaks English? (polite/informal)
오 five (S-K number)
오늘 today
오늘 아침 this morning
오늘 오전 this afternoon
오다 (오-) come (v.)
오디오 audio set, stereo set
웨요? Why?
외- affix for maternal side relatives
외시촌 cousin (mother's side)
외삼촌 unmarried uncle (mother's side)
외숙모 uncle's wife (mother's side)
외할머니 grandmother (mother's side)
외할아버지 grandfather (mother's side)
원쪽 left, left side
요 short form ending
요리를 아주 잘 하시는데요! Your cooking skills are excellent!
요리하다 (요리하-) cook (v.)
요리해요. (I) cook.
요즘 lately, these days
요즘 어떻게요? How are you these days?
요즘 재미있어요. I'm having fun these days.
요즘 좋아요. I'm doing fine these days.
요즘 힘들어요. I'm having a hard time these days.
유 
우리(들) we (pl.)
우리(들)의 our (pl.)
우선 first of all
우승하다- to win the championship (v.)
우유 milk
운동 exercise (n.)
운동하고 있다. (I am exercising.
운동하다 exercise (v.)
운동해요. Let's exercise; I am exercising.
운동해요. Leave a voice mail.
음식 food
음식이 아주 맛있어요! The food is very delicious!
음악 music
응 양 yeah (non-polite)
응원 cheer
응원력 power of cheering
의 
의료 보험증 medical insurance card
의사 선생님 doctor
의자 chair
의지 will, volition
의학 medical studies
우 
유람선 cruise
유월 June
육 six (S-K number)
육 개월 동안 for six months
요 
은 topic particle
이

이
this; tooth, teeth; two (S-K number)

-이
subject particle

이 입금함
Please fill in the deposit slip.

이 전화번호 맞아요?
Is this phone number correct?

이거
this thing

이거 정말 안 되겠는데.
It can't be. (an expression said to yourself about something troublesome)

이다
be (v.)

이런
this kind

이런
this type

이러 오세요.
Come this way.

이메일 보내주세요.
Send me an e-mail, please.

-이면
if

이모
mother's sister

이모부
mother's sister's husband

이번 학기에 좀 바빠요.
I am a bit busy this semester.

이상하다 (이상하-)
strange, be (v.)

이상하요.
It's strange.

이상해지다 (이상해지-)
strange, become (v.)

이십
twenty (S-K number)

이월
February

이제 곧 방학이에요.
Soon it'll be a vacation.

-이지
non-polite ending, giving a background after

이후로

인기
popularity

인기가 많아요.
I heard that it is not popular.

인기가 있어요.
to be popular

일
one (S-K number); work, job

일곱
seven (K-K number)

일곱 시
7 o'clock

일어나요.
(I) get up.

일요일
Sunday

일월
January

일찍
early

일찍 일어나요.
en (us)

일찍 일어나요.
will work with

일하고 싶어요.
(으)로

일하고 싶어요.
Do you work?

일하고 싶어요.
(으)로

일하고 싶어요.
(I) should work.

일해야.
I am working.

일으키
entrance

일금
deposit

일금 중
I'd like to make a deposit, please.

일금 중
deposit slip

일따 (일-)
wear (v.)

있다 (있-)
be (v.), exist (v.), have (v.)

있다면서...
I heard that you had...

있어요...
there is/there are...

가

자기들
themselves

자다 (자-)
sleep (v.)

자루
pencils counter

작이지다 (작아지-)
smaller, become (v.)

작은 방
small (bed)room

작은 사이즈
small size

작은 사이즈 있어요?
Do you have a smaller size?

-잔
glass counter, cup counter

잔돈
Do you have any change?

잔돈 있으세요?
wait a second (v.); wait a second (non-polite)

잠깐만
Please hold on a second.

잠깐만요.
let's sleep; I am sleeping.

잠자요.
interesting, be (v.)

잠이있어요.
It's interesting. (v.)

잠이있어요다 (잠이있어요-)
funny, become (v.)

잘 가!
Good-bye! (informal, non-polite)

잘 먹었습니다!
The food was great! (polite/frmnl)

잘 생각어요!
(He is) good looking! (compliment about a man)

잘 생겼어요!
happy looking (polite/frmnl)

잘 어울리요.
It fits you well.

잘 어울리다 (어울리다-)
fit well (v.)

잘 지냈어요?
(Have you been doing well?

잘 지났어요.
(I) have been doing well. (non-polite)

잘 하는데 뭐.
I think you do it well.

잘 하시는데요. You're doing well.

잘 갖추고 가세요. You dialed a wrong number.

잘하다 (하-)
well, do (v.); well, speak (v.); well, play (v.)

잠깐만.
wait a second (v.);

잠깐만요.
wait a second (non-polite)

잠깐만요.
Please hold on a second.

잠깐만요.
let's sleep; I am sleeping.

잠자요.
interesting, be (v.)

잠이있어요.
It's interesting. (v.)

잠이있어요다 (잠이있어요-)
funny, become (v.)

제가요.
that over there; I

제가요.
that thing over there

저금 통장
savings account

저기
there, over there

저녁
evening, dinner

저는 컴퓨터를 I don't know a lot

저는 컴퓨터는 I don't know a lot

저는 컴퓨터를 I don't know a lot

저를 따라 오세요.
Follow me, please.

저의
my (polite)
제일 first, most, best
제주도 Jeju Island
조강하다 jog (v.)
조심해서 가세요! Good-bye! (polite/informal)
존재하는 existing
 좀 a little, a bit
 좀 더 주세요. Please give me some more. (polite/informal)
 좀 받아 주세요. Please take a look at it. Please help me.
 좀 싸게 해 주세요. A little bit of a discount, please.
 좀 이상해요. It's a bit strange.
종로 3가 Jongro 3 ga (central business area of Seoul)
 좋- good, nice, okay, positive
좋겠니? Would it be good? (non-polite)
좋다 ( 좋-) good, be (v.)
좋아 보이다 look good (v)
 좋아하다 get better (v)
 좋아하다 ( 좋아하다- ) get better (v); become good (v)
좋은 good
좋은 생각 good idea
좋은 생각이 있어요! I have a good idea! (polite/informal)
좋은 생각이네! Good idea! (non-polite)
좋은 하루 되세요! Have a nice day! (idiom)
좋을까요? Will it be good to...?
주다 ( 주- ) give (v.)
주말 weekend
주민 등록증 citizen's registration card (ID)
주민등록증 좀 주세요. Please give me your ID.
주소 address
주중에 during weekdays
주희 preparation
중 즐거운 여행 되세요! Bon voyage!
중상 symptoms
지 마세요 don't (negative command marker)
지금은 통화 중이신데요. ( She/He is on the phone now.)
지난 last, past
지내다 spend time (v.)
지하철 subway
진로 diagnosis
집 house
집에 가요. (I) go home.
집중한 salty
-품 about (amount), approximately
차 car
차 온 가요? Do you have cold/ice water?
차 very
창고 storage
창문 window
찾는 finding
채식주의자 vegetarian
책상 desk
책장 bookshelf
처음 first time
전 one thousand (S.K number)
전만해요. Not at all.
청바지 blue pants, jeans
청소하다 ( 청소- ) clean (v)
체하다 ( 체- ) stomachache, have (v)
체한 것 I seem to have a stomachache.
초대하다 ( 초대- ) invite (v)
지하철 subway
진로 diagnosis
집 house
집에 가요. (I) go home.
집중한 salty
-품 about (amount), approximately
차 car
차 온 가요? Do you have cold/ice water?
차 very
창고 storage
창문 window
찾는 finding
채식주의자 vegetarian
책상 desk
책장 bookshelf
처음 first time
전 one thousand (S.K number)
전만해요. Not at all.
청바지 blue pants, jeans
청소하다 ( 청소- ) clean (v)
체하다 ( 체- ) stomachache, have (v)
체한 것 I seem to have a stomachache.
초대하다 ( 초대- ) invite (v)
지하철 subway
진로 diagnosis
집 house
집에 가요. (I) go home.
집중한 salty
-품 about (amount), approximately
차 car
차 온 가요? Do you have cold/ice water?
차 very
창고 storage
창문 window
찾는 finding
채식주의자 vegetarian
책상 desk
책장 bookshelf
처음 first time
전 one thousand (S.K number)
전만해요. Not at all.
청바지 blue pants, jeans
청소하다 ( 청소- ) clean (v)
체하다 ( 체- ) stomachache, have (v)
체한 것 I seem to have a stomachache.
초대하다 ( 초대- ) invite (v)
지하철 subway
진로 diagnosis
집 house
집에 가요. (I) go home.
집중한 salty
-품 about (amount), approximately
차 car
차 온 가요? Do you have cold/ice water?
차 very
창고 storage
창문 window
찾는 finding
채식주의자 vegetarian
책상 desk
책장 bookshelf
처음 first time
전 one thousand (S.K number)
전만해요. Not at all.
청바지 blue pants, jeans
청소하다 ( 청소- ) clean (v)
체하다 ( 체- ) stomachache, have (v)
체한 것 I seem to have a stomachache.
초대하다 ( 초대- ) invite (v)
지하철 subway
진로 diagnosis
집 house
집에 가요. (I) go home.
soccer field
depart (v.)
affix for paternal side relatives
friend
I meet a friend.
relatives
seven (S-K number)
July
bed
king
knife
My cursor is not moving.
coffee
coffee shop
computer engineering
Turn off the computer, please.
Are you good with computers?
My computer is out of order.
cola
Are you Mr. Chris?
Chris said that... as (they) grow up, as (they) get bigger
big thing
Do you have a bigger size?
older uncle (father's older brother)
older aunt (father's older brother's wife)
tall (person's height)
tall person (polite hon.)
King Kong
ride (v.), get on (v.)
boarding time
tennis
Saturday
I am about to vomit.
account, bankbook
through
through
I get off work.
tempura (battered fried food)
team leader
shocking, explosive
green, blue (occasionally)
(She has) blue eyes.
arm
eight (S-K number)
August
fax
fan
one-way ticket
conveniently
fork
ticket
blue, green (occasionally)
item(s)
full-tasting
professional soccer
programmer
program
My printer is not working.
PDF file
need (v.)
pink
one (K-K number)
do (v.)
if
(He is doing...)
white
hockey
school
one pair (noun counter for clothes)
One pair, please.
1 o’clock
Korean
Do you speak Korean?
hanbok, traditional Korean dress
to (someone)
to (someone) (spoken form)
grandmother (paternal)
grandfather (maternal)
reported, said
airline
seafood-scallion pancake
do, does (v.)
Do you have a cell phone number?
waist, back
I have back pain.
currently
형  
older brother (of a male)

호텔  
hotel

혹시  
maybe

화면 보세요.  Look at the screen, please.

화요일  Tuesday

화장대  
bureau

화장실  bathroom

화장실은 The bathroom is okay.

관찰야.  chemistry

회  
sashimi

회사  
company, work

후식  dessert

후추 좀 주세요.  Could you pass (give) me some black pepper?

휴가  vacation

휴가 낼 수 있어요?  Can you ask for a vacation?

휴가내다  vacation, leave for

(휴가내-)  a (v.)

흰  white